REPORT RESUMES

ED 010 481 48
LINGALA, BASIC COURSE.
BY- REDDEN, JAMES E. AND OTHERS
FOREIGN SERVICE INST., WASHINGTON, D.C.
REPORT NUMBER NDEA-VI-288 PUB DATE 63
EDRS PRICE MF-$0.45 HC-$12.40 310P.

DESCRIPTORS- *LINGALA, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, *BASIC VOCABULARY, *LINGUISTICS, *TEXTBOOKS, MANUALS, LANGUAGE PATTERNS, GRAMMAR, STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS, COURSE ORGANIZATION, INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS, TAPE RECORDINGS, DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, CONGO

A MANUAL ON LINGALA, KNOWN ALSO AS MANGALA, A TRADE LANGUAGE SPOKEN IN AREAS ON BOTH SIDES OF THE CONGO RIVER, IS PRESENTED. THE SPEAKER ON WHOSE SPEECH THE MATERIALS ARE BASED IS FROM LEOPOLDVILLE. THE TRANSCRIPTION SYSTEM CONSISTS OF THE ORTHOGRAPHY REGULARLY USED TO WRITE LINGALA PLUS DIACRITICAL MARKINGS TO CLEARLY INDICATE TONE AND PRONUNCIATION. LINGALA IS A TONE LANGUAGE CONSISTING OF MANY WORDS BORROWED FROM OTHER LANGUAGES (FRENCH, ARABIC, ENGLISH, AND PORTUGUESE). ASSIMILATED WORDS ARE SPELLED AS PRONOUNCED IN LINGALA, WHILE WORDS RECENTLY BORROWED AND NOT ASSIMILATED ARE GIVEN THE USUAL FRENCH SPELLING. THE TEXT CONTAINS 24 UNITS FOR STUDY PLUS A GLOSSARY. THE COURSE IS DESIGNED TO PROVIDE BASIC STRUCTURES AND VOCABULARY FOR SITUATIONS IN WHICH THERE WOULD BE A NEED FOR THIS LANGUAGE. TAPE RECORDINGS ARE DESIGNED TO ACCOMPANY THE TEXT. (RS)

ED010481

LINGALA

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE
Office of Education
This document has been reproduced exactly as received from the person or organization originating it. Points of view or opinions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

BASIC COURSE

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

JAMES REDDEN, E. BONGO AND ASSOCIATES

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1963

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

LINGALA

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
CARLETON T. HODGE

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C., 20402 - Price $1.50

PREFACE

Lingala is a trade language spoken along about a nine hundred mile stretch of the Congo River from Leopoldville upstream. Most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of other languages and use Lingala for communicating with persons outside their own language group.

The Lingala Basic Course is one of a series prepared by the Foreign Service Institute in its Special African Languages Program, coordinated by Earl W. Stevick. This series is being produced under an agreement with the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act.

The course in its present form is based on classroom experience with a group of Foreign Service Officers. It is designed to provide basic structures and vocabulary for the situations in which the foreigner is most likely to need Lingala.

The linguist in charge of the project has been James E. Redden. He was assisted by Frederic Bongo, Ernest Masakala, and Emil Zola, Language Instructors.

The tapes which accompany the text were prepared in the Foreign Service Institute Language Laboratory under the supervision of Gabriel Cordova.

H. E. Sollenberger

Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean
School of Language and Area Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents iv

Introduction

Identification and location x
Tone xi
Symbol list xii

Unit 1

Dialogue: 'Greetings' 1
Note: 1. Verb prefixes 2
2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'..... 3
3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/ 3
4. Particle /na/ and /ya/: Possession 3
5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description 4
6. Response to yes-no questions 4
7. Intonation: Statement vs. Question 5
8. Nouns: Singular and Plural 6
9. /o/ before another vowel 7
10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use 7

Unit 2

Dialogue: 'Do you speak Lingala?' 10
Note: 1. Negation: /tẹ́/ 11
2. Verb: Base and affixes 12
3. Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective 12
4. Tense: Time Segments 12
5. Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations 14
6. Habitual Action: Continued State 15
7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Future 16
8. Spelling of long or double identical vowels 16

9. Vowel Harmony 16
10. The Kituba Language 18

Unit 3

Dialogue: 'Do you want to come to my house today?'.. 21
Note: 1. Infinitive prefix: /ko-/ 23
2. Purpose: Immediate Future 24
3. Immediate Present 24
4. Potential Future 25
5. Imperative 25
6. Spelling of long identical vowels 25
7. Possessive Construction with Infinitive... 30
8. Immediate Past of /-lía/ 30
9. Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases 30

Unit 4

Dialogue: 'The Rapids' 31
Note: 1. Noun Classes 33
2. Verb Subject Prefixes 35
3. Nasal Homorganic with following Consonant 36
4. Adjectives 43
5. Prominence of Initial Sentence Position .. 44

Unit 5

Dialogue: 'On the Way to Work 45
Note: 1. Nouns of deed or action, type 1 48
2. Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns . 48
3. Very Polite Questions and Requests 49
4. Vowel Harmony in Noun Prefixes 49
5. Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive 49
6. Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals 50
7. Telephone Numbers 50
8. Plural of /mokáma/ 'hundred' 50
9. 'Passive' Plural 55

10. Adjective Subordinate Clauses 55
11. /kosolola na/ 55

Unit 6

Dialogue: 'At the Office' 56
Note: 1. Equational Sentences 60
2. Non-animate Independent Pronouns 60
3. Subjunctive 60
4. Applicative Suffix 61
5. Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/ 61

Unit 7

Dialogue: 'At the Market' 66
Note: 1. Desiderative 69
2. Nominalization of Adjectives 69
3. Interrogative Relative Pronouns 74
4. Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses 74
5. /-tíkala/ Plus Object 75
6. Please 75

Unit 8

Dialogue: 'At the Filling Station' 76
Note: 1. Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision 80
2. Reversive 80
3. Reversive Stative 80
4. Derived Stems Without Simple Stems 81
5. Causative 81
6. Degree of Immediate Past 81
7. Proverb Concordance 82
8. Non-applicative Verbs With Two Objects 87
9. Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative 87

Unit 9

Dialogue: 'The Houseboy' 88
Note: 1. Comparison of Intensity 91
2. Definite Condition 91

3. General Prohibitions 91
4. Special Meanings of Derived Stems 92
5. /téé/ Followed by /na/ 92
6. /libosó/ Plus Subjunctive 97

Unit 10

Dialogue: 'The Telephone' 98
Note: 1. Hypothetical Supposition 106
2. 'Passive' Plural 106
3. Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses 106

Unit 11

Dialogue: 'At the Doctor's' 107
Note: 1. Emphatic /wápi/ 111
2. Spelling of /óo/ 111

Unit 12

Dialogue: 'Mosquitoes' 117
Note: 1. Nouns From Derived Stems 121
2. Agent Nouns 122
3. /wa/: /ya/ 122
4. Literary Use of /ndé/ of Mark Future 122
5. Hyperbole with /...mayę́lę tę́/ 122
6. Norms of Deed or Action, Type 2 122

Unit 13

Dialogue: 'The Workshop' 130
Note: 1. Passive 134
2. Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal 135
3. /mikǫlǫ mikomi mosika/ 135
4. Instrument Nouns, Type 1 136
5. Locative Nouns, Type 1 136
6. Avoidance of Base Repetition 136
7. Instrument Nouns, Type 2 136
8. Instrument Nouns, Type 3 138
9. Expletive 138

Unit 14
Dialogue: 'Elections' 143
Note: 1. Miscellaneous Nouns 146
2. /se/ 147
3. Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object 152
4. Lovanium University 153
5. Leopoldville II 153

Unit 15
Dialogue: 'Military Service' 154
Note: 1. Intermediate Past 157
2. Distant Past 157
3. Comparison of Intensity 158
4. Comparison of Degree 158
5. Inversion of Subject and Verb 158

Unit 16
Dialogue: 'Building a Road' 164
Note: 1. Subject With Two Verbs 169
2. Immediate Past of /-longwa/ 169
3. Indefinite Condition 169

Unit 17
Dialogue: 'Traffic Control' 175

Unit 18
Dialogue: 'A New House' 184
Note: 1. /-zala ya/ 188
2. Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject 189

Unit 19
Dialogue: 'Leaving For The Store' 195
Note: 1. Reflexive 199
2. Compound Agent Nouns 203
3. Kinship Terminology 204

Unit 20
Dialogue: 'A Student Visa' 205
Note: 1. /ífo/ plus Subjunctive 208
2. Reduplication for Intensity 208
3. Wishes, Intentions, Plans 208

Unit 21
Dialogue: 'A Lost Pencil' 214
Note: 1. Double Spatial Relationships 217
2. Partitive 218

Unit 22
Dialogue: 'The Bus to Kimwenza' 223
Note: 1. /longwá áwa tíí na Kimwénza/ 226
2. /nsima ya miko̩lo̩ mísátu/ 226

Unit 23
Dialogue: 'A Wedding' 232
Note: 1. Suggestive Cohortative 236
2. Distant Indefinite Future 241

Unit 24
Dialogue: 'The Seasons' 242

Glossary 252

Introduction

Lingala is a lingua franca or trade language spoken in the areas on both sides of the Congo River from Leopoldville up to about a hundred miles from Stanleyville. Lingala, usually called Mangala by Africans, was originally the language of the Bamangala, a Bantu tribe that has almost completely disappeared. Most speakers of Lingala are native speakers of another language and use Lingala as a means of communicating with other tribal groups and to a lesser extent with Europeans; however, there is a growing number of younger people, especially in urban centers such as Leopoldville, whose native language is Lingala. Since Lingala is spoken by so many people of varied linguistic backgrounds, it is inevitable that the language as spoken in different areas should vary to a greater or lesser degree.

The speaker on whose speech these materials are based is from Leopoldville, a child of parents who could not speak each other's language and who consequently always spoke Lingala with each other and with their children. Lingala has been a written language for quite some time, but unfortunately written or 'literary' Lingala is different in many ways from Lingala as it is nearly always spoken by Africans. One can say without hesitation that literary Lingala is an invention of Europeans who have tried to 'improve' on the language, because Africans who speak Lingala fluently have trouble understanding literary Lingala even when it is spoken. This manual is based strictly on Lingala as spoken by the person described above.

The transcription system used in this manual is the orthography regularly used to write Lingala plus diacritic markings to indicate tone, which is not usually written, and to make it clear how a word or segment is pronounced in cases where the student may have difficulty interpreting the orthograhy. Some words have been respelled, but this is indicated in the footnotes the first time the respelling occurs.

Lingala contains many words borrowed both from African and European languages. It is often difficult, if not impossible, to recognize words borrowed from other Bantu languages. Since most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of some other language, words from other languages are constantly used in Lingala. A number of Arabic words have come in via Swahili. Portuguese and French words have been borrowed for several centuries, and many such words have been so fully assimilated into the sound system that they too are very hard to recognize. A number of English words also have entered. French words are freely used in everyday speech in a more or less unassimilated form. Those persons who speak French fluently also try to pronounce French words as they would be in French when these words are used in Lingala. Assimilated words occuring in this text are spelled as pronounced in Lingala, and the first time they occur, the standard French spelling is given in parentheses, e.g., /letá/ (l'état), 'government'. Words recently borrowed and not assimilated into the Lingala sound system are given the standard French spelling in the Lingala text. Unassimilated French words usually have a high tone on the final syllable. The diacritic marks on French words are NOT tone marks, but they are the same as those regularly used in French spelling.

Lingala, like almost all the languages spoken south of the Sahara, is a tone language. Each syllable has its own tone. Tone is as much an integral part of a syllable as vowels and consonants. Words are distinguished by tone, e.g., /ngáí/, 'I', 'me' (a low and two highs), and /ngai/, 'sour(ness)', 'bitter(ness)' (three lows). Lingala has two contrastive or phonemic tones: high /´/, low / / (unmarked). However, there are many speakers of Lingala who use a stress system instead of tones. Most speakers who use a stress system stress the penultimate syllable. Because of these speakers and because tone has a smaller phonemic yield, i.e., plays a smaller role, in Lingala than in the great majority of African languages, one can obviously communicate in Lingala without using its tone system. But the majority of speakers of the language do use tone, including the speaker used as the model for this manual,

Sentence intonation, e.g., use of pitch to distinguish statements and questions, is also used in Lingala. This is described in Note 1.7. In reference to the notes in this manual, the first numeral refers to the unit and the second numeral refers to the note.

In the four column chart given below, column I gives the orthography except for /e̩/ and /o̩/ (See footnote 3 below), column II gives the phonemes, column III gives the phonetic symbols, and column IV is an approximation of the sound using American English and French sounds for comparison.

Symbol	Phoneme	Phonetics	Approximation
p	/p/	[p]	p̲in
t	/t/	[t̪]	t̲in
k	/k/	[k]	c̲ome
kp[4].	/kp/	[kp, 'kp]	simultaneous k̲ and p̲
b	/b/	[b]	b̲e
d	/d/	[d̪]	d̲o
g	/g/	[g]	g̲o
gb[4].	/gb/	[gb, 'gb]	simultaneous g̲ and b̲
f	/f/	[f]	f̲ee
s	/s/	[s̪]	s̲ee
h	/h/	[h]	h̲e
z	/z/	[z̪, ǰ, d̪z̪, dǰ]	z̲ero
m	/m/	[m]	m̲e
n	/n/	[n̪, ŋ]	n̲o, sin̲g̲
ny	/ ɲ /	[ɲ ỹ]	y̲e pronounced through the nose
ngb[4].	/ ɱ /	[ɱ]	simultaneous m̲ and ŋ̲
l	/l/	[l̪]	l̲et
w	/w/	[w]	w̲e

y	/y/	[y]	yes
v[1].	/v/	[v]	vine
r[1].	/r/	[r, y, x]	French gare
i	/i/	[i^, ɣ]	beat[2]
e	/e/	[ɪ, e]	bāit[2]
ẹ[3]	/ɛ/	[ɛ, əe^]	bet
a	/a/	[a, ɑ]	bottle
ọ[3]	/ɔ/	[ɔ]	bought
o	/o/	[o, ʊ]	boat[2]
u	/u/	[u^, u]	boot[2]
.	/#/	step down in pitch on preceding syllable and pause	
,	/|/	pause	
?	/||/	greater interval between high and low than for /#/ and usually stress on the preceding high	

A number of special symbols are also used as explained below.

( ) Encolosed Lingala elements are usually elided at conversation speed; or enclosed English elements are given for clarity of meaning.

/ / In the chart above, this symbol means Lingala phonemics; elsewhere, it means the symbolization used in this grammar.

// // Ordinary Lingala orthography. Spaces between words to mark word boundaries are the same as those used in the orthography except as given in the footnotes.

NOTES

1. /v/ and /r/ are used only in unassimilated loan words.

2. There is no y- or w-offglide with Lingala vowels in contrast to English vowels which sound somewhat the same.

3. /e̩/ is usually //e//, but sometimes // ε //, /o̩/ is usually //o//, but sometimes // ɔ // .

4. /kp/, /gb/, and /ngb/ are very rare. This manual contains only one word with /gb/ and no words with /kp/ of /ngb/. They are usually explosive, but some speakers are reported to use implosives.

Unit 1

Basic Sentences

-A-

mbó̩té̩	greetings, good morning/ afternoon/evening
1. Mbó̩té̩.	Hello.

-B-

é̩e̩	yes
2. É̩e̩, mbó̩té̩.	Hello.

-A-

-zala	to be, exist, live, sit, dwell
ozalí	you (sg.) are
malámu	good, well, fine
3. Ozalí malámu?	How are you?

-B-

nazalí	I am
ná	and, with, as well as, even
yó̩, yó̩o̩	you (sg.)
4. É̩e̩, nazalí malámu. Ná yó̩?	I'm fine. And you?

-A-

5. Ẹ́ẹ, nazalí malámu.	I'm fine.

-B-

mama, ba-	mother
mwana, $^{\theta}$bána	child
na	and, with; of, having; consisting of; at, along, by
6. Mamá na bána azalí malámu?	How is your wife?

-A-

7. Ẹ́ẹ, azalí malámu.	She's fine.

-B-

mpé	and, also, likewise
8. Ná bána mpé?	And the children?

-A-

bangó	they, them, those
bánsọ	all
9. Ẹ́ẹ, bangó bánsọ bazalí malámu.	They are all fine.

NOTES

1.1. Verb prefixes.

Verbs have one of several prefixes to mark: (1) person (first, second, third), (2) number (singular, plural), and (3) other grammatical categories which will be discussed later. Note the underlined prefixes in the chart below.

ANIMATE SUBJECT PREFIXES OF VERBS

	Singular		Plural	
1st person	nazalí	I am	tozalí	we are
2nd person	ozalí	you (sg.) are	bozalí	you (pl.) are
3rd person	azalí	he, she, it is	bazalí	they are

1.2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'

At conversation speed /ná/ is usually /na/, i.e., low-toned, but for emphasis or if there is ambiguity, it is /ná/, i.e., high-toned, and is stressed, i.e., louder than adjacent syllables, e.g., /azalí ná mwána/, 'he is with the child', or /tatá ná mamá ná bána/, 'the father and also the mother and the children as well'. In a question /ná/ is always high.

1.3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/

The verb /-zala/ plus /na/ has a number of meanings from the English point of view. Most commonly /-zala na/ translates 'has' or 'have', e.g., /azalí na mwána/, 'he has a child', but a number of other meanings are possible, e.g., 'he is with the child', 'he is looking after the child'.

1.4. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Possession

One of the uses of the particles /na/ and /ya/ is to mark possession. The noun preceding the particle is the possessed, and the noun or pronoun following the particle is the possessor. If the possessor is a noun, /ya/ occurs, e.g., /mwána ya mobálí/, 'the child of the man/male/husband'. If the possessor is a pronoun, /na/ usually occurs, e.g., /mwána na ngáí/, 'my child', 'child of me'. /ya/ does occur occasionally before pronouns in possessive constructions. If the possessor is a pronoun, the independent form of the pronoun occurs. See the chart below.

INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS

	Singular	Plural
1st person	ngáí	bísú
2nd person	yǫ́, yǫǫ́	bínú
3rd person	yé, yeé	bangó

1.5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description

In general if /na/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as 'and', 'in addition'; but there are a few specialized constructions like /mamá na bána/, 'woman with children, 'wife', 'lady'. This construction is used as a polite term of address if it is known to the speaker that the woman being addressed has children. Or it is used as a polite term of reference to the wife of the man being addressed. If it is not known to the speaker whether the couple has children, one would use /mwásí na yǫ́/, 'your woman/wife/female', as a term of reference and /mamá/ 'mother/lady/madam', as a term of address. Both terms are polite, but /mamá na bána/ and /mamá/ establish greater rapport if used. Likewise /tatá na bána/, 'husband/man/gentleman', and /tatá/, 'father/gentleman/sir', occur in this type situation when referring to a man.

In general if /ya/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as, 'of', 'belonging to'; but it may also indicate description or quality, e.g. /mwána ya mobáli/, 'boy', 'male child', 'son'. Compare note 1.4.

1.6. Response to yes-no questions.

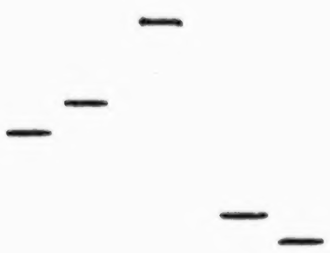
In answering a yes-no question, it is necessary to say /ę́ę/, 'yes', or /tę́/, 'no', even though the question is answered with a sentence, e.g., /Ozalí malámu?/, 'Are you well?', is answered by /ẹ́ẹ̣, nazalí malámu./, 'Yes, I am well.'

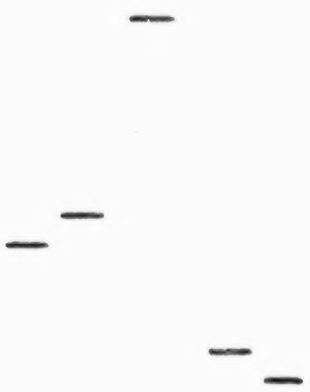
1.7. Intonation: Statement vs. Question

Statements and questions are distinguished by intonation, i.e., they have different pitch patterns or sentence melodies. In general, the pitch level of a sentence becomes gradually lower. The interval or amount of pitch difference between high and low is greater in a question than in a statement, especially between the last high and the lows in the preceding syllable and in the following syllable, but in a long sentence the interval between high and low is no greater in the first several syllables than the interval in a statement.

INTONATION

Statement	Question
He likes meat.	Does he like meat?
Alingí nyama.	Alingí nyama?

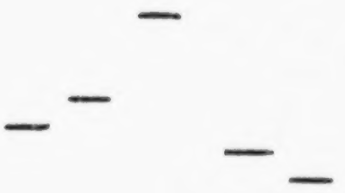


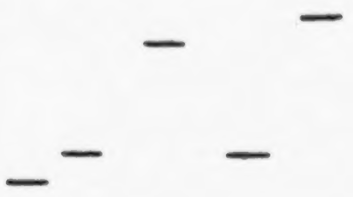


Though the pitch does fall over a sentence, the second of two low tones is slightly higher if followed by a high tone. The last syllable of a statement is conspicuously lower in pitch and usually in amplitude, but at the end of a question only a low tone is lower. A final high in a statement is usually just a little lower than a preceding low. A final high in a question is much higher than a preceding low; a final high after a high is approximately on the same level as or a little higher than the preceding high. A final high in a question may be either level or high-rising.

INTONATION

Statement	Question
He likes manioc leaves.	Does he like manioc leaves?
Alingí mpǫndú.	Alingí mpǫndú?





1.8. Nouns: Singular and Plural

Nouns are marked for singular and plural by prefixes. Most nouns referring to persons have /mo-/ in the singular and /ba-/ in the plural, e.g., /mótu/, 'person', 'human', and /bátu/, 'people'. Kinship terms usually have no prefix in the singular, e.g., /tatá/, 'father', but do have /ba-/ in the plural, as in /batatá/, 'fathers'. The plural prefix is listed after a noun the first time the noun occurs. If the plural is irregular, the entire plural form is given, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', /⊙bána/, 'children'. Irregular plurals are marked with the symbol ⊙ to distinguish them from alternate forms of the singular. The plural should be learned along with the vocabulary item. The plural of some (especially abstract) nouns rarely occurs. Rare plurals are given in parentheses, e.g., /bolaí, (ma-)/, 'length', 'depth', 'height'. Also some nouns occur only in the plural.

1.9. /o/ before another vowel.

/o/ before another vowel is regularly /w/, e.g., /*moána/, is /mwána/, 'child'.

1.10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use

In doing the drills, the teacher is to give the student the first sentence. After having the student repeat the first sentence, give him the underlined portion of the next sentence and have the student give back the new sentence composed of the underlined portion plus the required parts of the preceding sentence. See model below.

MODEL DRILL

Teacher: Nazalí malámu.

Student: Nazalí malámu.

Teacher: Ozalí

Student: Ozalí malámu.

LEXICAL DRILL 1

1.	Nazalí malámu.	I am fine.
2.	Ozalí malámu.	You (sg.) are fine.

3.	Azalí malámu.	He/she is fine.
4.	Tozalí malámu.	We are fine.
5.	Bozalí malámu.	You (pl.) are fine.
6.	Bazalí malámu.	They are fine.

LEXICAL DRILL 2

1.	Azalí malámu?	How is he?
2.	Mwána na yọ azalí malámu?	How is your child?
3.	Mwási na yé azalí malámu?	How is his wife?
4.	Mobáli na yé azalí malámu?	How is her husband?
5.	Tatá na bínú azalí malámu?	How is your father?
6.	Mamá na bangó azalí malámu?	How is their mother?
7.	Bána na yọ bazalí malámu?	How are your children?
8.	Bamamá na bísú bazalí malámu?	How are our mothers?
9.	Bangó bánsọ bazalí malámu?	Are they all all right?
10.	Mamá na bána azalí malámu.	How is your wife?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Answer affirmatively:

1.	Ozalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, nazalí malámu.
2.	Azalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, azalí malámu.
3.	Bozalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, tozalí malámu.
4.	Bazalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, bazalí malámu.
5.	Bána na yọ bazalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, bána na ngáí bazalí malámu.
6.	Tatá na yọ azalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, tatá na ngáí azalí malámu.

7.	Mamá na bangó azalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, mamá na bangó azalí malámu.
8.	Mwána na yé azalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, mwána na yé azalí malámu.
9.	Bána na ngáí bazalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, bána na yọ́ bazalí malámu.
10.	Mwásí na yọ́ azalí malámu?	Ẹ́ẹ, mwási na ngáí azalí malámu.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Azalí mwána.	He is young.
2.	Nazalí na mwána.	I have a child.
3.	Nazalí na bána.	I have children.
4.	Bazalí ná bána.	They are with the children.
5.	Bazalí ná mamá na ngáí.	They are with my mother.
6.	Tozalí na mamá na ngáí.	We are with my mother.
7.	Tozalí na mwána na yọ́.	We are taking care or your child.
8.	Mamá azalí na mwána na yọ́.	Mother has your child.
9.	Mama azalí na bangó bánsọ.	Mother has all of them.
10.	Bozalí na bangó bánsọ.	You have all of them.

UNIT 2

Basic Sentences

-A-

	-loba	to speak, tell, say
1.	Olobaka Lingála?	Do you speak Lingala?

-B-

	-yéba	to know, be acquainted with; may, be allowed to
	naínu	still, yet
	tẹ́	not, no
2.	Nayébí naínu malámu tẹ́.	I don't know it very well yet.

-A-

	Français	French
3.	Olobaka Français mpé?	Do you speak French too?

-B-

	kási	but
	Anglais	English
4.	Ẹ́ẹ, kási nayébí Anglais tẹ́.	Yes, but I don't speak English.

-A-

	ndínga, n-	language
	níni	what, which
	ndáko, n-	house
5.	Olobaka ndínga níni na ndáko?	What language do you speak at home?

-B-

letá (l'état)	government, state
Kitúba, Kikóngo ya Letá, Kutúba	the Kituba language

6. Tolobaka Lingála ná Kitúba. We speak Lingala and Kituba.

-A-

-yékola	to study, learn

7. Naákoyékola Lingála. I'm studying Lingala.

-B-

8. Malámu. That's fine.

NOTES

2.1 Negation: /tę́/

The negative particle /tę́/ follows whatever it modifies. If it modifies a sentence, it occurs at the end of the sentence, e.g., /nayébí Anglais tę́/, 'I don't speak English.'

2.2 Verb: Base and Affixes

olobaka

nayébí

These may be diagrammed:

Subject Prefix	Stem		Aspect Suffix
	Base	Verbal Extension	
o-	lob	-ak	-a
na-	yéb		-í

The base and aspect suffix occur in every verb form. Prefixes and verbal extensions may or may not be present. The tone of the first stem syllable is fixed, i.e., always high or always low; but the tone of succeeding syllables of the stem is the same as the tone of the aspect suffix.

2.3 Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective

There are two aspect suffixes: the perfective and imperfective. The tone of the aspect suffix is high in the past and imperative, but low in the non-past and infinitive.

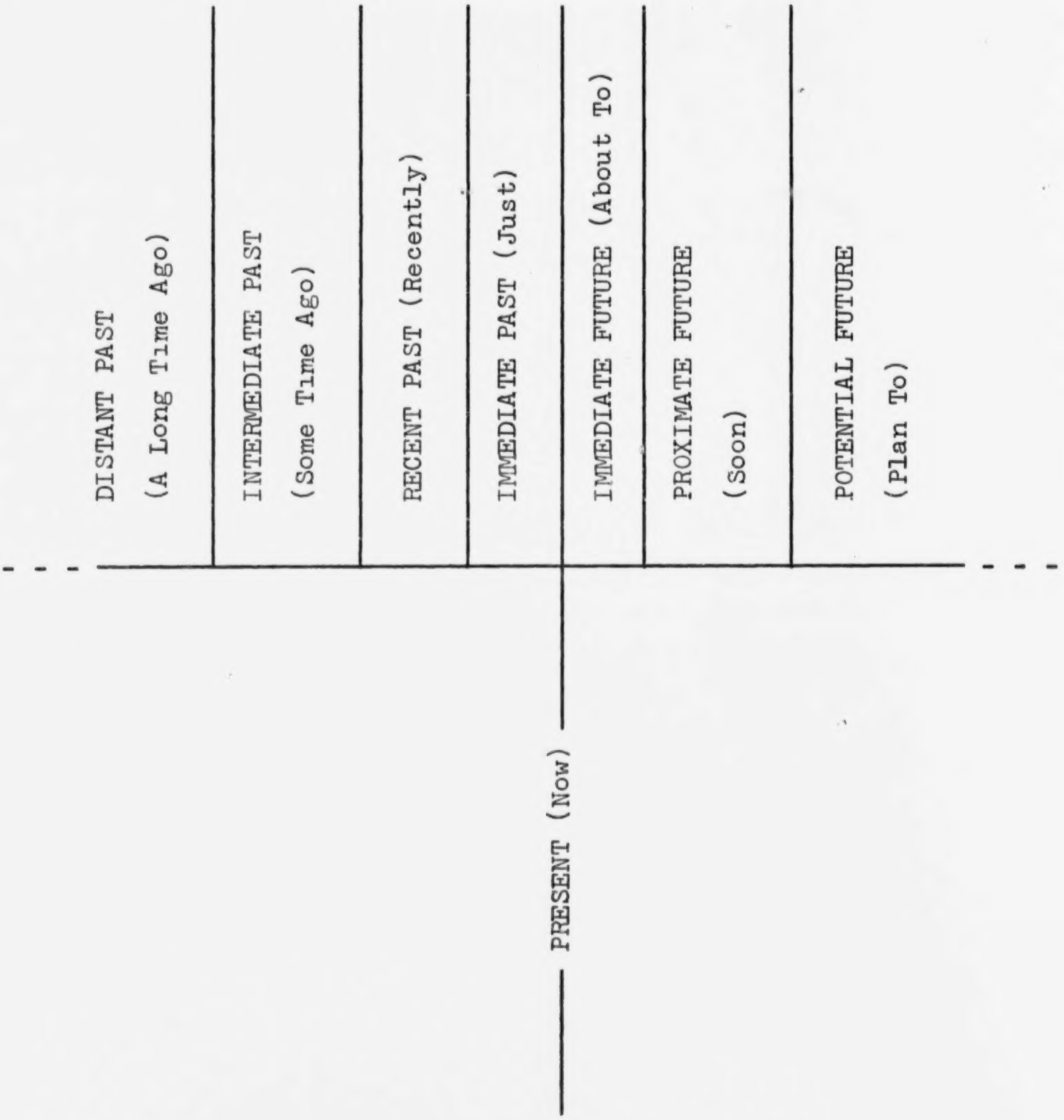
The perfective suffix /-í/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating a completed action or state arrived at by the time referred to in the sentence. Since /-í/ is always a past, it always has high tone.

The imperfective suffix /-a/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating an action or state continued through an indefinite period of time. Since the imperfective /-a/ occurs with the past, present, and future, it has high or low tone as described above.

2.4 Tense: Time Segments

In addition to dividing time into past, present, and future, Lingala segments time in a series of steps from the present. The borderline between the various degrees of distance from the present is relative, i.e., cannot be stated exactly in hours or days. The various tenses will be studied in the following lessons. Compare the English approximations of Lingala time divisions in the diagram below.

LINGALA TIME DIVISION


DISTANT PAST
(A Long Time Ago)
INTERMEDIATE PAST
(Some Time Ago)
RECENT PAST (Recently)
IMMEDIATE PAST (Just)
IMMEDIATE FUTURE (About To)
PROXIMATE FUTURE
(Soon)
POTENTIAL FUTURE
(Plan To)
PRESENT (Now)

2.5 Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations

The perfective suffix /-í/ marks (1) the immediate past, (2) permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics, and (3) permanent or present locations. (1) The immediate past most often refers to some time earlier the same day as the moment of speaking or some time the preceding day, but it may refer to any time in the last three or four or more days if the speaker considers the event to have just taken place. (2) Permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics are such things as sex, nationality, name, profession, and marital state. (3) A permanent location, is a geographic or natural location; a present location is the present temporary location of anything movable. Compare the examples below.

1.	nazalí	I have been, have become, have reached the state of, have been created as, i.e., I am, am in the act or state of, am by nature.
	Nazalí mobáli.	I am a man.
	Nazalí áwa.	I am here.
	Nazalí koloba.	I am speaking.
2.	nayébí	I have become acquainted with, i.e., I know.
	Nayébí Lingála.	I speak Lingala.
	Nayébí yé.	I know him.

3.	nasálí	I have done, I did, have just done, recently did.
	Nasálí yangó.	I made it.
	Nasálí mosálá.	I did the work.

2.6 Habitual Action: Continued State

The combination of the verbal extension /-ak-/ and the imperfective suffix marks the habitual present, which indicates a regular activity or usual part of the subject's behavior over a long, indefinite period, including the present. Compare the examples below.

1.	nazalaka	I am regularly, always, habitually
	Nazalaka na ndáko.	I'm always home.
	Nazalaka ná yé.	I'm always with him.
2.	nalobaka	I regularly speak.
	Nalobaka Lingála.	I(always)speak Lingala, i.e., Lingala is a habitual activity of mine.
3.	nasálaka	I regularly do.
	Nasálaka bilámba.	I (habitually) make clothes, i.e., I am a tailor.

2.7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Future

A long or double subject-pronoun vowel with a high tone on the second element plus (or minus) a /ko-/ prefix to the verb stem, which in turn has the imperfective suffix, marks (1) the temporary habitual present and/or (2) the proximate future. The /ko-/ prefix is optional, but it nearly always occurs. (1) A temporary habitual present indicates an activity which is a regular part of the subject's behavior for a rather short temporary period including the present; (2) a proximate future is something that will take place soon, e.g., /Naákoyékola Lingála/, 'I'm studying Lingala', 'At the present time, one of my regular activities is studying Lingala', or 'I'm going to be studying Lingala in the near future'.

2.8 Spelling of long or double identical vowels.

The Lingala orthography does not usually indicate long or double vowels of the same quality, e.g., /naákoyékola/ is usually //nakoyekola//. But since this spelling is the same as that of the potential future (See Note 3.2), sometimes an acute accent is added to the vowel of the subject pronoun, e.g., /naákoyékola/ is sometimes //nákoyekola//. Those cases when the regular orthography writes a long vowel will be indicated in the notes.

2.9 Vowel Harmony

There are certain limitation as to which vowels can precede or follow other vowels. These limitations are called vowel harmony. There are two series of vowels: primary and secondary.

primary vowels	i e a o u
secondary vowels	ẹ ọ (a)

/a/ is often a secondary vowel in verbal extensions and in the imperfective suffix, but /a/ is almost always primary in a base. The relationship of these two series is perhaps easier to see in a vowel triangle.

		Front		Back	
	High	i		u	Primary
Mid	High Mid	e		o	
	Low Mid	e̩		o̩	Secondary
	Low		a		Primary (-Secondary)

Vowel Harmony Rules

I. If the first syllable of a stem contains a primary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be primary, i.e., high mid, e.g., /naáyé̲ko̲la̲/, 'I'm studying.'

II. If the first syllable of a stem contains a secondary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be secondary, i.e., low mid, unless a high vowel occurs after the secondary vowel, in which case succeeding mid vowels will be primary, e.g., /naté̩̲ké̩̲lí/, 'I sold for (someone)', but /nabo̩̲ngí̲sé̲lí/, 'I repaired for (someone)'.

III. When a secondary vowel occurs in a syllable before /a/ in either habitual extension /-ak-/ or the imperfective suffix /-a/, the same secondary vowel as in the preceding syllable also usually occurs in the extension and the imperfective suffix, e.g., /nake̩̲nde̩̲ke̩̲/, 'I go', is the more common form, but /nake̩̲ndaka/, 'I go', is also fairly common. If both the habitual extension and the imperfective suffix occur, both the extension and the suffix have the same vowel, i.e., /*nake̩̲nde̩̲ka̲/ does not occur.

IV. A low mid vowel immediately followed by a high vowel is often replaced by a high mid vowel, e.g., /omó̩ní/, 'I see' is the more common form, but /omóní/, 'I see' is fairly common.

In bases ending in a vowel, a form with two primary vowels occurs, e.g., /nakeí/, 'I went', not /*nake̩í/. If /a/ occurs in this environment, it acts as a secondary vowel, e.g., /nayéí/, 'I came', not /*nayáí/.

V. Verb prefixes are not influenced by vowel harmony.

VI. Some noun prefixes are subject to vowel harmony influence of the first syllable of the base in the same ways as described above for vowels following the initial base syllable. This will be further studied in Note 4.3.

2.10 The Kituba Language

Kituba is a lingua franca spoken to the west and south of Lingala. Many speakers of Lingala also know Kituba, and conversely. Lingala and Kituba share many words and grammatical structures. Kituba is also called Kikóngo ya Letá; but sometimes Kituba is restricted to mean that dialect of the language spoken in the eastern or Kwango-Kwilu region, and Kikóngo ya Letá restricted to mean that of the western or lower Congo region.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL I

-yóka	to hear, listen, feel understand
mokę́, mi-	small, thin; a little; a bit, few

1. Olobaka Lingála?	Do you speak Lingala?
2. Olobaka Français mpé?	Do you speak French too?
3. Nayébí Français mpé.	I speak French too.
4. Nayébí Lingála mokę́.	I speak a little Lingala.
5. Bayébí Lingála mokę́.	They speak a little Lingala.

6. Bayébí malámu tẹ.	They don't speak it very well.
7. Toyókí yọ malámu tẹ.	We didn't understand you very well.
8. Toyókí yọ mokẹ́.	We understood you partly.
9. Boyébí Anglais mokẹ́.	You (pl.) speak a little English.
10. Boyébí malámu.	You (pl.) know it very well.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nazalí na ndáko ya ngáí.	I'm at home.
2. Nazalí na ndáko ya bangó.	I'm at their house.
3. Azalí mwána ya bangó.	He is their child.
4. Azalí mwána malámu.	He's a good child.
5. Toyébí Lingála malámu.	We speak Lingala well.
6. Toyébí Lingála mokẹ́.	We speak a little Lingala.
7. Ozalí mwána mokẹ́.	You are a small child.
8. Ozalí mwána ya mamá ya ngáí.	You are a child of my mother.
9. Azalí tatá ya mamá ya ngáí.	He is my mother's father.
10. Azalí tatá ya ngáí.	He is my father.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Naákoyékola Lingála.	I'm studying Lingala.
2. Naákoyékola ndínga na bínú.	I'm learning your language.
3. Nayébí ndínga na bínú.	I know your language.
4. Nayébí Anglais tẹ́.	I don't speak English.
5. Ayébí Anglais tẹ.	He doesn't know English.

6.	Ayébí yọ́.	He knows you.
7.	Bayókí yọ́.	They hear you.
8.	Bayókí malámu.	They feel fine. (i.e., They have recovered.)
9.	Oyébí Lingála malámu.	You speak Lingala well.
10.	Oyébí Lingála ná Français.	You speak Lingala and French.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Nayébí yé malámu tẹ́.	I don't know him very well.
2.	Nayébí mwána na yé ya mobáli.	I know his son.
3.	Azalí mwána na yé ya mobáli.	He is her son.
4.	Azalí na ndáko na ngáí.	He is at my house.
5.	Tolobaka Kitúba na ndáko na ngáí.	We speak Kituba at my house.
6.	Tolabaka Kitúba ná Français mpé.	We speak Kituba and French also.
7.	Bayébí Kitúba ná Français mpé.	They know Kituba and French also.
8.	Bayébí naínu malámu tẹ́.	They don't know (how) very well.
9.	Bayébí Anglais mokẹ́.	I speak a little English.
10.	Azalí mwána mokẹ́.	He is a small child.

Unit 3

Basic Sentences

-A-

-linga	to want, like; be almost on the point of
-yáa	to come, become
lẹlọ́	today
1. Olingí koyáa lẹlọ́ na ndáko na ngáí?	Do you want to come to my house today?

-B-

sọ́kọ́, sọ́kí	if
-zwá	to get, receive, find, meet
ntangú, ntangó	time, hour, clock, sun
2. Sọ́kọ́ nazwí ntángu nakoyáa.	If I get time, I will come. If nothing prevents me, I'll come.

-A-

-lía	to eat
3. Olingí kolía níni?	What do you like to eat?

-B-

nsósó	chicken
lọ́sọ	rice
4. Nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	Chicken and rice.

-A-

5. Ná níni?	And what else?

-B-

mbísi	fish
mpọndú	manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)
nyama	meat
6. Mbísi, mpọndú ná nyama.	Fish, manioc leaves with meat.

-A-

-lámba	to cook, prepare food
7. Malámu, nakolámba.	Good, I'll fix it.
-mẹlẹ	to drink, suck up, smoke
8. Omẹla níni?	What would you like to drink?

-B-

vínu	wine
masanga	wine, beer
mbíla	palm tree, palm nuts
9. Vínu na masanga ya mbíla.	Some wine and palm wine.

-A-

-koka	to be able, can, be sufficient, be more than a given number
-yáa ná	to bring, come with
10. Okokí koyáa ná mwásí na yọ́ tẹ́?	Can't you bring your wife?

-B-

mibalé	two
11. Tokoyáa bísú mibalé.	We'll both come.

		-A-
12.	Ke̩ndé̩ malámu.	Goodbye.
		-B-
13.	Ná yó̩ mpé.	Goodbye.
14.	Pésá mamá na bána mbó̩té̩.	Say hello to your wife for me.
		-A-
15.	Pésá mpé bána mbó̩té̩.	And remember me to your children.
		-B-
16.	Melesí.	Thanks.

NOTES

3.1 Infinitive prefix: /ko-/

Verbal nouns, here called infinitives, are marked by the prefix /ko-/ added to the imperfective verb stem, e.g., /kosála/, 'to do', 'doing'. This prefix may be added to any imperfective verb stem, so that, for example, there is also a form /kosálaka/, 'to do habitually'. Infinitives are invariable and, like other nouns, may be subjects of verbs, e.g., /kosála ezalí malámu/, 'It's good to work', 'Work is a good thing'. (The verb prefix /e-/ is described in Note 4.2.)

Infinitives often occur after a main verb much like a complementary infinitive in English, and the meaning of such a construction is usually obvious, e.g., /okokí koyáa/, 'you are able to come'. But sometimes the meaning is difficult for a speaker of English to guess. In such cases a footnote is given.

A verb of motion plus an infinitive indicates purpose, e.g., /ayéí kolía/, 'he has come to eat', 'he has come in order to eat'.

3.2 Purpose: Immediate Future.

/-linga/ followed by an infinitive expresses (1) purpose and/or (2) immediate future. (1) Purpose is a desire or a want; (2) the immediate future is something about to happen, e.g.,/olingí koyáa/, 'you want to come,' or 'you are about to come', 'you will come very soon'. Compare also /balingí koloba Lingála/, 'They want to speak Lingala', or 'They will (soon be able to) speak Lingala, (but they can't speak it now)', 'They have nearly reached the state of being able to speak Lingala'. Sometimes 'almost ready to' is a good translation.

3.3 Immediate Present

/-zalí/ plus an infinitive marks the immediate present, i.e., something taking place at the moment of speaking, e.g., /nazalí kolía/, 'I am eating', 'I am in the act/process/state of eating at this moment'.

Though the temporary habitual present (See Note 2.8) and the immediate present both usually translate 'I am... ing' and though both may often be used to describe the same event, they often contrast, e.g., /naákolía/, 'I'm eating', i.e., 'I'm studying (or whatever) but from time to time I eat something even though at this moment I may not have food in my mouth', /nazalí kolìa/, 'I am eating something right at this moment'.

The immediate future (See Note 3.2) and the immediate present are both used to describe something which is going to happen very soon. If the immediate present is used, the event is so near that it is considered to have already begun, e.g., /azalí kokęndę/, 'He is going', 'He is already starting to leave', /alingí kokęndę/, 'He's about to go', 'He's going to leave in just a little bit'.

3.4 Potential Future

The prefix /-ko-/ plus the imperfective suffix with low tone form the potential future. The potential future may be any time in the future, but it is rather indefinite, i.e., it is much less sure to take place than the immediate and proximate futures, e.g., /nakoyáa/, 'I will come', 'I plan/intend to come'.

3.5 Imperative.

The imperative (commands) singular consists of the verb stem plus a high tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /Kẹndẹ́/, 'Go', 'Go away.

The imperative plural consists of the prefix /bo-/ plus the imperative singular, e.g., /bosálá/, 'work' (speaking to more than one person). However, the imperative singular is often used when addressing more than one person.

/-yáa/ is irregular in the imperative, e.g., /yáká/, 'Come', /yákáká/, 'Come regularly'.

3.6 Spelling of long identical vowels

/koyáa/ is //koya//. Compare Note 2.9

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Nalingí kolía.	I want to eat.
2.	Nalingí mbísi.	I like fish.
3.	Nalingí kolía mbísi.	I want to eat fish.
4.	Nalingaka kolía mbísi.	I like to eat fish.
5.	Nalingaka mpọndú ná nyama.	I often eat manioc leaves with meat.
6.	Nakolámba mpọndú ná nyama.	I'll cook manioc leaves with meat.
7.	Nakolámba nsósó ná lọsọ.	I'll fix chicken and rice.

8.	Balingí nsósó ná lǫsǫ.	They like chicken and rice.
9.	Balingí koloba Lingála.	They are going to speak Lingala.
10.	Azalí koloba Lingála.	He's speaking (in) Lingala.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Tozalí koyékola Lingála.	We are studying Lingala.
2.	Tozalí bána na yé.	We are his children.
3.	Bozalí bána na yé.	You are his children.
4.	Bozalí kokęndę.	You are leaving.
5.	Alingí kokęndę.	He wants to leave.
6.	Alingí koyáa ná mwási na yé.	He wants to come with his wife.
7.	Akokí koyáa ná mwási na yé.	He can come with his wife.
8.	Akokí kolía na ngáí.	He can eat with me.
9.	Balingí kolía na ngáí.	They want to eat with me.
10.	Balingí kokęndę lęlǫ́.	They want to leave today.

Question and Answer Drill 1

Answer the questions with a full sentence as directed by the underlined cues.

1.	Olingí koyáa lęlǫ́ na ndáko na ngáí?	Do you want to come to my house today?
	Ę́ę, nalingí koyáa lęlǫ́ na ndáko na yǫ́.	Yes, I want to come to your house.
2.	Okozwá ntángu ya koyáa na ndáko na ngáí?	Will you have time to come to my house?
	Ę́ę, nakozwá ntángu ya koyáa na ndáko na yǫ́.	Yes, I'll have time to come to your house.

3. Bolingí kolía níni?	What do you (pl.) want to eat?
Tolingí kolía nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	We want chicken and rice.
4. Balámbaka níni?	What do they usually prepare?
Balámbaka mbísi, mpọndú ná nyama.	They usually prepare fish and manioc leaves with meat.
5. Baákolámba níni?	What are they going to prepare?
Baákolámba mbísi, mpọndú ná nyama.	They are going to prepare fish and manioc leaves with meat.
6. Akokí koyáa ná bána na yé tẹ́?	Can't he bring his children?
Tẹ́, akokí koyáa ná bána na yé tẹ́.	No, he can't bring his children.
7. Bokokí kokẹndẹ bínú míbalé tẹ́.	Can't you both go?
Tẹ́, tokokí kokẹndẹ bísú míbalé tẹ́.	No, we both can't go.
8. Ozalí na níni na ndáko?	What do you have in the house?
Nazalí na vínu ná masanga ya mbíla na ndáko.	I have wine and palm wine in the house.
9. Omẹlaka níni?	What do you usually dirnk?
Namẹlaka masanga ya mbíla.	I usually drink palm wine.
10. Bolobaka ndínga níni?	What language do you usually speak?
Tolobaka Lingála.	We usually speak Lingala.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Okayáa lẹlọ́ na ndáko na ngáí.	You will come to my house tomorrow.
2. Okoyáa kolía nsósó na nyama.	You will come to eat chicken and meat.
3. Nakolámba nsósó na nyama.	I will prepare chicken and meat.
4. Nakolámba sọ́kọ́ nazwí ntángu.	I will fix (some) if I get time.
5. Nakokẹndẹ lẹlọ́ sọ́kọ́ nazwí ntángu.	I'll go today if I have time.
6. Nakokẹndẹ lẹlọ́ na ndáko na yé.	I'll go to his house today.
7. Bakozala na ndáko na yé.	They will be at his house.
8. Bakozala ná mwású na ngáí.	They will be with my wife.
9. Nakokẹndẹ komẹlẹ ná mwású na ngáí.	I'm going out drinking with my wife.
10. Nakokẹndẹ komẹlẹ vínu na masanga ya mbíla.	I'm going out to drink wine and beer.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Alíaka mpọndú ná nyama.	He always eats manioc leaves and meat.
2. Aléí mpọndú ná nyama.	He ate manioc leaves and meat.
3. Aléí nsósó.	He ate (the) chicken.
4. Bokokí kozwá nsósó.	You (pl.) can have (the) chicken.
5. Bokokí kozwá mbísi ná nyama.	You (pl.) can have (the) fish and also (the) meat.
6. Balingí mbísi ná nyama.	They want (the) fish and (the) meat too.

7.	Balingí kokẹndẹ na ndáko.	They are about to go home.
8.	Tozalí kokẹndẹ na ndáko.	We are on the way home.
9.	Tozalí kolámba nyama.	We are cooking the meat.
10.	Ayébí kolámba nyama.	She knows how to fix the meat.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Mamá aákolámba nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	Mother is going to fix chicken and rice.
2.	Mamá akolámba nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	Mother will fix chicken and rice.
3.	Mamá alámbí nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	Mother fixed chicken and rice.
4.	Mamá alámbaka nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	Mother fixes chicken and rice. quite often.
5.	Mamá azalí kolámba nsósó ná lọ́sọ.	Mother is fixing the chicken and rice now.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Mwána na ngáí ya mobáli akokẹndẹ lẹlọ́.	My son will leave today.
2.	Mwána na ngáí ya mobáli akeí lẹlọ́.	My son left today.
3.	Mwána na ngáí ya mobáli aákokẹndẹ lẹlọ́.	My son is leaving (later) today.
4.	Mwána na ngáí ya mobáli azalí kokẹndẹ lẹlọ́.	My son is leaving (right away) today.
5.	Mwána na ngáí ya mobáli akẹndaka ntángo nyọ́nsọ.	My son regularly leaves at this time.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1.	Kẹndẹ́ malámu.	Goodby.
2.	Kẹndẹ́ ndáko.	Go home. Go to the house.
3.	Kẹndẹ́ kolámba nyama.	Go fix the meat.
4.	Kẹndẹ́ koyékola.	Go study.
5.	Kẹndẹ́ kozwá lọ́sọ.	Go get some rice.

3.7 Possessive Construction with Infinitive.

ntángu ya koyáa

When an infinitive is the possessor noun in a possessive construction, the infinitive is descriptive and usually translates as (1) a complimentary infinitive, (2) 'for' plus a gerund, or (3) present participle, e.g., /ntángu ya kolía/, (1) 'time to eat', (2) 'time for eating', or (3) 'eating time'.

3.8 Immediate Past of /-lía/

/-lía/ has an irregular immediate past /-léí/.

3.9 Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases

mwána na ngáí ya mobáli

It both a possessive and a descriptive phrase modify a noun, the possessive phrase comes first, as in the phrase above, 'my son'.

Unit 4

Basic Sentences

-A-

díi	friend, comrade
mọ́nọ, mọ́na	to see, feel
'chutes', (ba-)	rapids
bóongó	thus, so
-tẹlẹmẹ	to stop, stand up; insist
wápi	where

1. Díi, nalingí komọ́na bachutes, bóongó nakokí kotẹ́lẹmẹ wápi?	Say, I'd like to see the rapids. Where can I go to get a good view of them?

-B-

2. Oyébí ndáko ya 'President' na Bínza?	Do you know the President's house at Binza?

-A-

3. Ẹ́ẹ, nayébí.	Yes, I do.

-B-

-mata	to go up, climb, rise
mwáa	small, little, few
ngómbá, n-	hill, mountain
esíká, bi-	place

4. Okomata mwáa ngómbá esíká ya 'monument' ya 'Stanley' ezalí.	You climb the hill where the monument to Stanley is.

-A-

nsima, n-	back, rear, later, afterwards
na nsima	then, next
5. Ná nsima?	And then what?

-B-

lọbọ́kọ, libọ́kọ, ma-	arm, sleeve, side
mwásí, ba-	left, female
libángá, ma-	rock, stone
loléngé, ndéngé, n-	sort, kind; manner, way; quality; character, makeup
6. Na nsima okomọ́na na lobọ́kọ ya mwásí mabángá ndéngé na ndéngé.	Then you will see all sorts of rocks on the left.

-A-

melesí (merci)	thanks
tíkala	to stay, remain
7. Melesí, tíkálá malámu.	Thanks, goodbye.

-B-

8. Kẹndẹ́ malámu.	Goodbye.

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Kangá ndáko.	Close the door.
Kangá mo̩no̩ko̩ ya ndáko.	Close the door.
Fungólá lininísa.	Open the window.
Fungólá búuku.	Open your book (s).
Lobá lisúsu.	Say it again.
Lobá nsima na ngáí.	Repeat after me.
Yóká malámu.	Listen carefully.
Zóngísá na motúna óyo.	Answer the question.

-kanga	to stop, cease; close, shut, take, grasp, wrap up
mo̩no̩ko̩, mi-	mouth, opening; word, message
-fungola	to open, release, unlock
lininísa, ma-	window
lisúsu	again, anew; besides, moreover
búuku, (ba-)	book
-zóngisa	to send/give back, answer
motúna, mi-	question
óyo	this, these, the

4.1 Noun Classes

Lingala nouns are divided into several classes, which are distinguisehd by class prefixes. The MO-BA and the 0-BA classes were introduced in Unit 1. Besides kinship terms, the 0-BA class contains most recently-borrowed words, e.g., /chutes/, /bachutes/, 'rapids'. The plural prefix appears after each noun the first time it occurs. All the nouns beginning with /mo-/ in the previous lessons belong to the MO-BA class except /mobáli/ and /mokę́/, which are MO-MI class. All the nouns in previous lessons beginning with a nasal consonant (m or n) plus another consonant are N-N class. There is now a rather strong tendency among younger people to put nouns of the N-N class into the ∅-BA class, i.e., instead of /ndáko/, 'house' and/or 'houses', some young people say /ndáko/, 'house' and /bandáko/, 'houses', but the N-N pattern is still the dominant one for this class of noun.

The various noun classes are listed below. Note which singulars go with which plurals.

NOUN CLASSES

PREFIX CLASS	SINGULAR		PLURAL
MO-BA	motu	(person)	batu
∅-BA	tatá	(father)	batatá
MO-MI	monę́nę	(big)	minę́nę
LI-MA	libángá	(rock)	mabángá
BO-MA	bobína	(dance)	mabína
LO-MA	lokolo	(leg, foot)	makolo
E-BI	ebale	(river)	bibale
LO-N	lopę́tę́	(ring)	mpę́tę́
MO-N	mosúki	(hair)	nsúki
N-N	nzeté	(tree)	nzeté
KO	kobóta	(to give birth to)	-----

4.2 Verb Subject Prefixes

In Unit 1 the verb prefixes for animate subjects were introduced. Animate is here restricted to men and animals. In the third person animate/inanimate is distinguished. In the singular, the verb prefix is /a-/ if the subject is animate, but /e-/ if the subject is inanimate. In the plural, the verb prefix is /ba-/ if the subject is animate, but is the same as the prefix on the noun if the subject is inanimate with the exception that the inanimate N-N class has the plural verb prefix /mi-/, e.g., /ndáko mizalí.../, 'the houses are..'.

If there is an adjective after a plural noun, the prefix to the verb is in concord with the adjective prefix, e.g., /mabángá/ minẹ́nẹ mízalí.../, 'the big rocks are...'

VERB SUBJECT PREFIXES

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st 2 nd	na- o-	to- bo-
3rd animate	a-	ba-
3rd inanimate	e- e- e-	mi- ma- bi-

CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
PERSON	SUBJECT	VERB	SUBJECT	VERB
3rd animate	mo-	a-	ba-	ba-
	Ø-	a-	ba-	ba-
3rd inanimate	mo-	e-	mi-	mi-
	li-	e-	ma-	ma-
	bo-	e-	ma-	ma-
	lo-	e-	ma-	ma-
	lo-	e-	n-	mi-
	e-	e-	bi-	bi-
	n-	e-	n-	mi-
	ko-	e-	---	---

CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

1. Mwána azalí...	The child is...
2. Bána bazalí...	The children are...
3. Mobáli azalí...	The man is...
4. Mibáli bazalí...	The men are...
5. Libángá ezalí...	The rock is...
6. Mabángá mazalí...	The rocks are...
7. Mótuka ezalí...	The automobile is...

8.	Mítuka mizalí...	The automobiles are...
9.	Elǫ́kǫ ezalí...	The thing is...
10.	Bilǫ́kǫ bizalí...	The things are...
11.	Ndáko ezalí...	The house is...
12.	Ndáko mizalí...	The houses are...

In some dialects of Lingala, especially up-river from Leopoldville, the verb prefix in the third person in both the singular and the plural is the same as that of the prefix of the inanimate noun subject except that the N-N class has /e-/ sg. and /-i/ pl. for the verb suffix. Written Lingala usually follows up-river Lingala in this respect.

4.3 Nasal Homorganic with Following Consonant.

loléngé, ndéngé

Only certain combinations of nasal consonant plus another consonant occur. A nasal consonant is homorganic with the following consonant, i.e., it is made in the same mouth position as the following consonant.

	NASAL	BEFORE CONSONANT
labial	m	p, b, f
dental	n	t, d, s, z
velar	ŋ	k, g

/n/ plus /l/ is /nd-/, e.g., /loléngé/, 'kind', /ndéndé/, 'kinds'. However, the plural form of this word is often used as a collective singular.

/n/ plus /y/ is /nz/, e.g., /n-/ plus /-yémbo/ is /nzémbo/, 'song'. What is written /ny/ in the orthography as in /nyama/, 'meat', represents a single sound, an [ɲ], i.e., a palatal nasal. This sound can be approximated by pronouncing 'y' through the nose. /nz/ is a sequence of two sounds, /n/ plus /z/.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

	mobáli, mi-	right, male
	libosó, ma-	front; before
1.	Tolingí kokęndę komǫna bachutes.	We want to go see the rapids.
2.	Bazalí kokęndę komǫna bachutes.	They are about to see the rapids.
3.	Bazalí komata ngómbá.	They are climging the mountain.
4.	Boyébí komata ngómbá.	You are acquainted with mountain climbing.
5.	Boyébí ndáko ya 'President'.	You know where the President's house is.
6.	Namǫní ndáko ya 'President'.	I saw the President's house.
7.	Namǫní tatá ya bangó.	I saw their father.
8.	Natíkálí na tatá ya bangó.	I'm remaining with their father.
9.	Natíkálí na ndáko.	I'm staying home.
10.	Azalí libosó na ndáko.	He's in front of the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Tatá na ngáí alingí komǫna ndáko.	My father is coming to see the house right away.
2.	Mamá na bísú alingí komǫna ndáko.	Our mother is coming to see the house right away.

3.	Mamá na bísú akotíkala na ndáko.	Our mother will stay in the house.
4.	Mwána moke̩ akotíkala na ndáko.	The small child will stay in the house.
5.	Mwána moke̩ azalí na libángá.	The small child has a rock.
6.	Mobáli na yé azalí na libángá.	Her husband has a rock.
7.	Mobáli na yé azalí libosó na ndáko.	Her husband is in front of the house.
8.	Bána ya yó̩ bazalí libosó na ndáko.	Your children are in front of the house.
9.	Bána na yó̩ bazalí kolámba nsósó.	Your children are cooking chicken.
10.	Básí bazalí kolámba nsósó.	The women are cooking chicken.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Nazalí na ndáko.	I'm at home.
2.	Nazalí na ndáko.	I have a house.
3.	Nazalí na bána míbalé.	I have two children.
4.	Azalí mamá ya bána míbalé.	She is the mother of two children.
5.	Azalí mamá ya tatá na yó̩.	She is your father's mother.
6.	Le̩ló̩ tomó̩ní tatá na yó̩.	Today we saw your father.
7.	Le̩ló̩ tomó̩ní mabángá ndéngé na ndéngé.	Today we saw all kinds of rocks.
8.	Na nsima okomó̩na na lo̩bó̩ko̩ ya mwási mabángá ndéngé. na ndéngé.	Then you will see all sorts of rocks on the left.

9.	Na nsima okomọ́na na lọbọ́kọ ya mwásí ndáko ya bangó.	Then you will see their house on the left.
10.	Na libosó okomọ́na na lọbọ́kọ ya mobáli ndáko ya bangó.	Before that you will see their house on the right.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1.	Mwána mokẹ́ akotíkala na ndáko.	The small child will stay in the house.
	Bána mikẹ́ bakotíkala na ndáko.	The small children will stay in the houses.
2.	Tatá na ngáí alingí komọ́na ndáko.	My father is coming to see the house.
	Batatá na bísú balingí komọ́na ndáko.	Our fathers are coming to see the houses.
3.	Mobáli na yé azalí na libángá.	Her husband has a rock.
	Mibáli na bangó bazalí na mabángá.	Their husbands have rocks.
4.	Mamá na yọ́ akolámba nyama.	Your mother will prepare the meat.
	Bamamá na bínú bakolámba nyama.	Your mothers will prepare the meats.
5.	Azalí mwána malámu.	She is a good child.
	Bazalí bána malámu.	They are good children.
6.	Azalí tatá ya ngáí.	He is our father.
	Bazalí batatá ya bísú.	They are our fathers.

7.	Nayókí mwána na yé ya mobáli tę́.	I didn't understand his son.
	Toyókí bána na bangó ya mibáli tę́.	We didn't understand their sons.
8.	Balobaka ndínga níni na Leó?	What language is spoken at Leopoldville?
	Balobaka ndínga níni na Leó?	What languages are spoken at Leopoldville?
9.	Mamá na ngáí aákotíkala na mwána.	My mother is staying with the child.
	Bamamá na bísú baákotíkala na bána.	Our mothers are staying with the children.
10.	Libángá mokę́ ezalí libosó ya ndáko.	There is a little rock in front of the house.
	Mabángá mikę́ mizalí libosó ya ndáko.	There are little stones in front of the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1.	Mobáli azalí na lopę́tę mokę́.	The man has a little ring.
	Mibáli bazalí na mpę́tę mikę́.	The men have little rings.
2.	Libángá monęnę ezalí na esíká óyo.	There is a big rock at this place.
	Mabángá minęnę mizalí na esíká óyo.	There are big rocks at this place.
3.	Mwásí azalí libosó ya libángá monę́nę.	The woman is in front of a big rock.

	Básí bazalí libosó ya mabángá minę́nę.	The women are in front of big rocks.
4.	Mwána azalí na lǫbǫ́kǫ́ ya mwásí ya ndáko.	The child is on the left side of the house.
	Bána bazalí na lǫbǫ́kǫ́ ya mwásí ya ndáko.	The children are on the left side of the house.
5.	Motu akofúnga lininísa.	Someone will close the window.
	Batu bakofúnga maninísa.	Some people will close the windows.
6.	Mwána ya mobáli aákozóngisa na motúna.	The boy is asking a question.
	Bána ya mibáli baákozóngisa na mitúna.	The boys are asking questions.
7.	Mwásí ayókaka mobáli na yé.	The woman obeys her husband.
	Básí bayókaka mibáli na bangó.	The women obey their husbands.
8.	Nzeté ezalí nsima ya ndáko.	There is a tree behind the house.
	Nzeté mizalí nsima ya ndáko.	There are trees behind the house(s).
9.	Mwána mwásí akeí na bobína.	The girl went to a dance.
	Bána básí bakeí na mabína.	The girls went to dances.
10.	Motu akangí búuku.	Someone has closed (his) book.
	Batu bakangí babúuku.	Some people have closed (their) books.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Mwásí na ngáí ayébí ndáko.	My wife knows where the house is.
2.	Mwásí na ngáí azalí na ndáko míbalé.	My wife owns two houses.
3.	Tatá na bísú azalí na ndáko míbalé.	Our father has two houses.
4.	Tatá na bísú azalí na lobọ́kọ́ ya mobálı ya ndáko.	Our father is on the right side of the house.
5.	Bána na bínú bazalí na lobọ́kọ ya mobálı ya ndáko.	Your children are on the right side of the house.
6.	Bána na bínú balingí kolía na nsima na ndáko.	Your children want to eat behind the house.
7.	Batu nyọ́nsọ balingí kolía na nsima na ndáko.	Everyone wants to eat in back of the house.
8.	Batu nyọ́nsọ batẹ́lẹ́mí libosó na ndáko.	Everyone is standing in front of the house.
9.	Bána mikẹ́ batẹ́lẹ́mí libosó na ndáko.	The small children have stopped before the house.
10.	Bána mikẹ́ bazalí komata mwáa ngómbá.	The little children are climbing the hill.

4.4 Adjectives

Lingala has only a few adjectives, but is in the process of developing several new ones. An adjective follows the noun it modifies, e.g., /mwána mokẹ́/, 'a small child'. New adjectival constructions are formed by /ya/, /mwána ya mobálı/, 'male child', 'son'. Many such constructions now regularly occur without /ya/, so that /mwána mobálı/, 'male child', 'son', is now the preferred form for many younger persons.

Nearly all adjectives are invariable, but there are a few which are marked for singular and plural, such as /mokẹ́/, /mikẹ́/.

4.5 Prominence of Initial Sentence Position.

For emphasis an element of a sentence may be placed initially, e.g., /Lẹlọ́ tomọ́ní tatá na yọ́/, 'Today we saw your father'. This gives an additional bit of emphasis to /lẹlọ́/, 'today', in contrast to some other day.

2

Unit 5

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ozalí kokęndę wápi?	Where are you going?

-B-

mosálá, mi-	work, job, trade, occupation
2. Nazalí kokęndę na mosálá.	I'm on my way to work.

-A-

-sála	to work, do, make, till, farm
3. Osálaka wápi?	Where do you work?

-B-

'mécanicien'	mechanic
CEGEÁC	C.E.G.E.A.C., a new-car dealer that imports American-made cars
4. Ngaí, nazalí mécanicien na CEGEÁC.	Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEAC.

-A-

-banda	to start, commence; since
5. Mosálá ya bínú ebandaka ntángu níni?	What time do you being work?

-B-

ngonga, n-	time, hour, bell, gong, clock
nsambo	seven

	ntọ́ngọ́, n-	morning, forenoon
6.	Mosálá ya bísú ebandaka na ngonga ya nsambo na ntóngọ́	Our work starts at seven in the morning.
	-A-	
7.	Nakokí koyéba esíká osálaka tẹ?	Might I know where you work?
	-B-	
	'secrétaire'	secretary
	'ambassade'	embassy
8.	Ngaí, nazalí secrétaire na ambassade ya Amérique.	Me, I'm a secretary at the American Embassy.
	-A-	
	áwa	here
	mọkọlọ, mi-	day
9.	Oyákí áwa mọkọlọ nini?	When did you arrive?
	-B-	
	mpọ́sọ	week, Saturday; salary, pay
	mísáto, mísátu	three
10.	Óyo mpọ́sọ ya mísátu.	This is my third week.
	-A-	
	-solola	to talk, converse, speak, tell
	mpó, mpóo, m-	thing, affair, matter; because, on account of
	mbángo, mbángu, m-	speed, swiftness

11. Malámu, mọkọlọ níni toko-sololá malámu, mpóo, naákokẹndẹ mbángu na mosálá.

Well then, we can have a chat one of these days; but now I'm in a hurry to get to work.

-B-

-pésa	to give, provide with
numeró (numéro)	number
-yébisa	advise, inform, make known

12. Pésa ngáí numeró ya telephone na yọ́, mpó náyébisa yọ́ mọkọlọ.

Give me your telephone number so I'll have it.

-A-

13. Numeró quatre-vingts trois, cinquante deux.

8352.

NUMERALS

mọ́kọ́	one
míbalé	two
mísáto, mísátu	three
mínei	four
mítáno, mítánu	five
motóbá	six
nsambo	seven
mwambe, mwambi	eight
libwá	nine

zómi	ten
zómi na mọ́kọ́	eleven
zómi na míbalé	twelve
ntúkú míbalé	twenty
ntúkú míbalé na mọ́kọ́	twenty-one
ntúkú mísáto	thirty
ntúkú mísáto na míbalé	thrity-two
ntúkú mínei	forty
nkámá, monkámá, mokámá, (mi-)	hundred
nkáma mitáno	five hundred
nkóto	thousand
nkóto nsambo	seven thousand

NOTES

5.1 Nouns of deed or action, type 1.

A limited number of nouns meaning the act or deed of the verb base are formed by the MO-MI prefix class plus a high-tone /-á/ suffix, e.g., /mosálá/, 'work', 'job', 'occupation'.

5.2 Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns .

Ngaí, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEÁC.

In Unit 1 the independent pronouns were introduced with the tones they have in possessive constructions. All independent pornouns except /ngáí/ are invariable; but when an independent or emphatic subject /ngáí/ is /ngaí/, as in /Ngaí, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEÁC/, 'Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEÁC.'

5.3 Very Polite Questions and Requests

Nakokí koyéba esíká osálaka tẹ́?

To ask a question or make a request in a very polite way, /-kokí/ prefaces the question or request, which is expressed with an infinitive, and /tẹ́/ occurs at the very end, e.g., /Nakokí koyéba esíká osálalaka tẹ́?/, 'Might I know where you work?', 'Would you be so kind as to tell me where you work?'

5.4 Vowel harmony in noun prefixes.

mọkọlọ

When a noun prefix containing a mid vowel occurs before a secondary vowel in the first syllable of a base, the prefix vowel is for many younger speakers low mid, e.g., /mọkọlọ/, 'day', except the infinitive which has a primary vowel in the prefix, e.g., /komọ́nọ/, 'to see'.

5.5 Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive

okákí áwa mọkọlọ níni?

The combination of the extension /-ák-/ and the perfective suffix /-í/ forms the recent past. The recent past most often refers to something which took place no later than the day before yesterday but within the last month; however, if the speaker considers the event to have happened recently, the recent past may refer to a few months ago, or in some cases even a few years ago. Likewise, it may refer to a time later than the day before yesterday if the speaker wants to imply recentness but not something which has just taken place. In the example given above from the dialogue, the questioner implies that he knows that the American has arrived only recently in Leopoldville, e.g., /Oyákí áwa mọkọlọ níni?/, 'When did you arrive?', 'You have arrived only recently, haven't you?'.

For verbs of state or existence, the recent past implies a state existing in or arrived at in the recent past, e.g., /nayébákí/, 'I knew', 'I came to know', or /ekokákí/, 'it was enough', 'it came to be sufficient'.

The recent past often indicates something which happened *before* something else in the past and thus translates like an English past perfect, e.g., /alíákí ntángu na nayákí/, 'He had eaten before I came'.

The past progressive is composed of the recent past of /-zala/ plus an infinitive, e.g., /nazalákí kolía/, 'I was eating'. The past progressive indicates something that was *going on* or *continuing* to happen for an *indefinite short* or *temporary* period, whereas the recent past indicates a *point* in or *definite block* of time, e.g., /nazaláki kolía ntángu ayákí/ 'I was eating when he came.'

5.6 Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

mpó̩so̩ ya mísátu

Cardinal numerals like other adjectives follow the noun they modify, e.g., /mpó̩so̩ mísátu/, 'three weeks'; but unlike many adjectives, /ya/ may not be inserted between a numeral and the noun it modifies without a change of meaning because /ya/ plus a numeral is an ordinal, e.g., /mpó̩so̩ ya mísáto/, 'the third week'.

5.7 Telephone Numbers

Telephone numbers are given in French in two-digit numbers, e.g., 'quatre-vingts trois, cinquante deux', '8352'.

5.8 Plural of /mokámá/, 'hundred'

/mikámá/, 'hundreds', is used only in /mikámá na mikámá/, 'hundreds and hundreds'; elsewhere, the singular form is used, e.g., /mokámá nsambo/, 'seven hundred'.

Other numerals do not have plural form.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Azalí kokẹndẹ wápi?	Where is he going?
2.	Otíkí secrétaire wápi?	Where did you drop off the secretary?
3.	Bakẹndẹ́kí wápi?	Where did they go?
4.	Akeí wápi?	Where is he going? Where has he just gone?
5.	Bozalaka wápi?	Where do you live?
6.	Balíaka wápi?	Where do you usually eat?
7.	Ndáko ya binú ezalí wápi?	Where is your house?
8.	Osálaka wápi?	Where do you work?
9.	Balobaka Lingála wápi?	Where is Lingála spoken?
10.	Olingí kokẹndẹ wápi?	Where do you want to go? Where are you about to go?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Nakeí mosálá	I'm on the way to work.
2.	Nakeí na esíká nasálaka.	I'm going to the place where I work.
3.	Azalí mécanicien na esíká nasálaka.	He is a mechanic at the place where I work.
4.	Azalí na ntángu malámu.	He's on time.
5.	Azalí libosó na ntángu.	He's early.
6.	Azalí nsima na ntángu.	He's late.
7.	Azalí kokẹndẹ mbángu na mosálá?	He's hurrying to work.
8.	Secrétaire azalí kokẹndẹ mbángu na mosálá.	The secretary is hurrying to work.

9.	Secrétaire azaláki kosolóla na ngáí.	The secretary was talking to me.
10.	Mécanicien azaláki kosolola na ngáí.	The mechanic was talking to me.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Ozaláki kokę́ndę́ wápi?	Where were you going?
2.	Ozaláki komǫ́nǫ níni?	What were you looking at?
3.	Olingáki komǫ́nǫ níni?	What did you want to see?
4.	Olingáki kokę́ndę komǫ́nǫ monument ya Stanley?	Did you want to go see the monument to Stanley?
5.	Bazaláki kokę́ndę komǫ́nǫ monument ya Stanley?	Were they going to see the monument to Stanley?
6.	Bazaláki kokę́ndę kolámba mbísi?	Were they leaving to fix the fish?
7.	Mwána azaláki kokę́ndę kolámba mbísi?	Was the child leaving to fix the fish?
8.	Mwána azaláki na mpǫndú ná nyama.	Did the child have manioc leaves and meat?
9.	Mamá na yǫ́ azaláki na mpǫndú ná nyama?	Did your mother have manioc leaves and meat?
10.	Mamá na yǫ́ akotíkala na ndáko?	Is your mother going to stay in the house?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Read the numbers horizontally.

a)	18	80	28	b)	40	50	4	5
	17	70	27		14	15	45	54
	16	60	26		60	70	6	7
	15	50	25		16	17	67	76
	14	40	24		20	30	2	3

c)	19	90	29	d)	36	63	33	66
	16	15	13		25	52	22	55
	20	50	40		67	76	77	66
	25	22	27		19	99	9	11
	38	68	18		8	88	38	78

e)	200	102	202	f)	200	300	400
	600	604	640		1500	1600	1700
	317	307	371		1808	1919	2000
	869	879	829		1962	2116	2473
	403	402	430		8217	5353	4962

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Read the following times in Lingala according to the model given below.

-koma	to arrive; become; begin
minútu, minítı, minútı	minute(s)
Tokomí na ngonga ya mọ́kọ́ na minútu ntúku míbalé.	It's 1:20

6:20

5:10

2:00

4:05

12:30

7:15

10:55

11:55

7:35

2:10

6:25

12:50

8:40	9:00
9:50	4:30
1:05	5:45
3:35	3:50

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

-bakısa	to add
-longola	to take away, remove

1.	Mọ́kọ́ bakísá mọ́kọ́, ekókí míbalé.	One and one is two.
2.	Mítano bakísá mísáto, ekokí mwambe.	Five and three is eight.
3.	Nsambo bakísá lıbwá, ekókí zómı na motóba.	Seven and nine is sixteen.
4.	Mínei bakísá míbalé, ekókí motóba.	Four and two is six.
5.	Lıbwá bakísá motóba, ekókí zómı na mítáno.	Nine and six is fifteen.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1.	Míbalé longólá mọ́kọ́, etíkálí mọ́kọ́.	Two minus one is one.
2.	Mínei longólá míbalé, etíkálí míbalé.	Four minus two is two.
3.	Ntúkú míbalé longólá zómı, etíkálı zómı.	Twenty minus ten is ten.

4.	Ntúkú misátu longólá ntúkú mibalé na mọ́kọ́, etíkálí libwá.	Thirty minus twenty-one is nine.
5.	Ntúkú mwambe longólá ntúkú nsambo, etíkálí zómi.	Eighty minus seventy is ten.

5.9 'Passive' Plural

Balobaka Lingála wápi?

That something 'is done' is often expressed by the third person plural, e.g., /Balobaka Lingála wápi?/, 'Where is Lingala spoken?', 'Where do they speak Lingala?' See also Note 10.2.

5.10 Adjectival Subordinate Clauses.

Nakéí na esíká nasálaka.

Adjectival subordinate clauses are not introduced by a relative, but are placed after the noun they modify just like any other adjective. Note /nasálaka/ in /Nakei na esíká nasálaka/, 'I'm going to the place where I work.'

5.11 /kosolola na/

Secrétaire azalákí kosolola na ngáí.

If followed by an object, /kosolola/ requires the particle /na/, e.g., /Secrétaire azalákí kosolola na ngáí/, 'The secretary was talking to me'.

Unit 6

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Mbọ́tẹ́, mwána mwásí.	Good afternoon, Miss.

-B-

2. Ẹ́ẹ, mbọ́tẹ́.	Good afternoon.

-A-

'bureau'	office
3. Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?	Is this Mr. Antoine's office?

-B-

míngi	much, many
yangó	it, they, them
4. Yangó, kási azalí na mosálá míngi lẹlọ́.	It is, but he's very busy today.

-A-

likambo, ma-	difference, dispute, case, affair
5. Nalingí náloba na yé likambo.	I would like to tell him something.

-B-

-lobela	to speak to
te	that...
6. Nalobélí yọ́ te alingí komọ́nọ motu tẹ́ lẹlọ́ na bureau na yẹ́.	I just told you that he doesn't want to see anyone at his office today.

-A-

-túna	to ask, question
-kọ́ta, -kọ́tọ	to go/come in
7. Okokí kotúna yé te sọ́kọ́ alingí nákọ́ta?	Would you ask him if I can come in?

-B-

8. Lobélá ngáí likambo olingí.	Tell me what you want.

-A-

-tála	to look, look at, stare at; guard keep; concern; visit
9. Etálí bísú míbalé, yọ́ tẹ́.	It concerns only us, not you.

-B-

-bóya	to refuse, reject, not want, despise
10. Sọ́kọ́ obóyí, okokọ́ta na bureau na yé tẹ́.	If you refuse (to tell me), you can't go in.

-A-

libótá, ma-	family, household; descent
11. Ezalí likambo ya libótá na yé.	It concerns his family.

-B-

motu, moto, ba-	person, human being, man; one, someone, somebody
-kúfa	to die
12. Motu mọ́kọ́ akúfí?	Has someone died?

-A-

nọ́kọ́, ba-	maternal uncle (see Note 19.3.)
mpási, m-	sickness, suffering, pain, misery, difficulty
makási	strong, hard, difficult, troublesome
13. Nọ́kọ́ na yé azalí na mpási makási.	His uncle is gravely ill.

-B-

toó	or
lopitálo, °balopitálo (l'hôpital)	hospital
14. Azalí wápi, na ndáko toó na lopitálo?	Where is he, at home or at the hospital?

-A-

sika	now, just now, new, recent
15. Bakeí na yé na lopitá sika óyo.	They have taken him to the hospital just now.

-B-

-zila	to wait, wait for
16. Zilá nayébisa yé.	Wait and I'll tell him.

-A-

17. Melesí.	Thanks.

-B-

18. Likambo tẹ́.	You are welcome. Don't mention it. It's nothing.

USEFUL PHRASES

Mọkọlọ ezalí malámu.	The weather is nice.
Likoló ezalí malámu.	The sky is clear.
Mọkọlọ ezalí mabé.	The weather is bad.
Likoló ezalí mabé.	The sky is cloudy.
Lẹlọ́ mpiọ́ míngi.	It's cold today.
Lẹlọ́ mpiọ́ makási.	It's cold today.
Lẹlọ́ mói míngi.	It's hot today.
Lẹlọ́ mói makási.	It's hot today.
Lẹlọ́ molungé míngi.	It's hot today. It's stifling today.
Likoló eyéí kitọ́kọ.	It's clearing up.
Likoló eyéí mabé.	It's clouding up.
Mbúla ezalí konọ́kọ.	It's raining.
Mbúla eékonọ́kọ.	It's raining.

likoló, ma-	sky, heaven; upstream; outside, exterior; on top, over, on, above; surface; because of
mabé	bad, evil, ugly
mpiọ́, m-	cold
mói	sun, sunlight, daylight, the heat of the sun
molungé, mi-	warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling
kitọ́kọ	beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat

mbúla, m-	rain, year, rainy season
-nǫ́, -nǫ́kǫ	to rain

6.1 Equational Sentences

Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?

Equational sentences are sentences which have no verb in which (1) two nouns are equated, e.g., /Mosálá na ngáí mécanicien/, 'I am a mechanic,' (2) a pronoun and noun are equated, e.g., /Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?/, 'Is this Mr. Antoine's office? or (3) possession is demonstrative, e.g., /Ndáko ya tatá na bangó/, 'The house belongs to their father'. In all three types there is an optional and equally current expression with the same meaning in which the two parts of the equation are linked by /-zalí/, e.g., /Mosálá na ngáí ezalí mécanicien/, 'I am a mechanic'.

6.2 Non-animate Independent Pronouns

Yangó

In Unit I the independent forms of the animate pronoun were introduced. There is also an independent inanimate pronoun /yangó/, 'it', 'they', 'them', which has the same form for singular and plural, e.g., /Pésá yé yangó/, 'Give it to him', 'Give them to him'.

6.3 Subjunctive

Nalingí náloba na yé likambó.

The subjunctive is marked by a high tone on the pronoun prefix and a low tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /náloba/, 'that I talk', as in /Nalingí náloba na yé likambó/, 'I would like to tell him something', literally, 'I want that I tell to him something'. Using the subjunctive is a very polite way of making a request, 'I want to tell him something', would be construed with an infinitive after /-linga/, as in /Nalingí koloba na yé likambo/.

The subjunctive is also used as an imperative, e.g., /Bólía/, 'Eat' (speaking to more than one person), or as a cohortative, e.g., /Tólía/, 'Let's eat'.

The subjunctive is also used to ascertain what another person wants done, e.g., /Nálía?/, 'Do you want me to eat?' or 'Do you think I should eat?'

To indicate obligation, i.e., 'should', 'ought to', /ekokí/ plus the subjunctive is used, e.g., /Ekokí ákęndę/, 'He should go', 'He ought to go', 'It is fitting that he go'.

6.4 Applicative Suffix

Nalobélí yǫ́

The applicative suffix /-el-/ means 'to do something for or to someone', e.g., /nalobélí yǫ́/, 'I told (to) you'. The same meaning can be expressed by /na/ as by /-el-/, e.g., /nalobí na yǫ́/, 'I told (to) you'.

6.5 Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/.

Nalobélí yǫ́ te alingí komǫ́nǫ motu tę́.

Indirect discourse is often introduced by the optional particle /te/, 'that', as in /Nalobélí yǫ́ te alingí komǫ́nǫ motu tę́/, 'I told you that he didn't want to see anyone.' /te/, 'that', is //'te// to distinguish it form /tę́/, 'not', which is //te//.

/te/ sometimes occurs in indirect discourse even if there is another particle at the beginning of the dependent clause, e.g., /Okokí kotúna yé te sǫ́kǫ́ olingí nákǫta?/, 'Can you ask him (that) if I can come in?'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Mosálá na yọ níni?	What's your occupation?
2.	Mosálá na ngáí mécanicien.	I am a mechanic.
3.	Ndáko ya mécanicien.	The house belongs to the mechanic.
4.	Ndáko ya tatá na bangó.	The house belongs to their father.
5.	Azalí tatá na bangó.	He is their father.
6.	Azalí kokẹndẹ na mosálá.	He is on his way to work. He has (already) left for work.
7.	Nalingí kokẹndẹ na mosálá.	I'm about to leave for work.
8.	Nalingí kokẹ́ndẹ kozwá nyama.	I want to get some meat.
9.	Bána bazalí kokẹndẹ kozwá nyama.	The children are going to get some meat.
10.	Bána bazalí komata mabángá.	The children are climbing the rocks.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Óyo buréau ya Monsiéur Zóla.	This is Mr. Zola's office.
2.	Óyo ndáko ya Monsiéur Zóla.	This is Mr. Zola's house.
3.	Óyo ndáko monẹ́nẹ.	This is a big house.
4.	Pésá yé ya monẹ́nẹ.	Give him the big one.
5.	Pésá yé mosálá.	Give him a job.
6.	Tozalí kokẹndẹ na mosála	We are going to work.
7.	Tozalí kokẹndẹ kotúna yé.	We are going to ask him.
8.	Mwásí akokí kotúna yé.	The woman can ask him.

9.	Mwásí akokí kobóya koloba na mobáli.	The woman can refuse to talk to the man.
10.	Mwána azalí kobóya koloba na mobáli.	The child is going to refuse to speak to the man.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Nalobélí yǫ́ te nazalí na mosálá.	I just told you that I'm busy.
2.	Nalobélí yé ázila.	I told him to wait.
3.	Túná yé ázila.	Ask him to wait.
4.	Túná bangó bákǫta.	Ask them to come in.
5.	Alingí bangó bákǫta.	He wants them to come in.
6.	Alingí kokęndę na ndáko.	He wants to go home.
7.	Alingí ákęndę na ndáko.	He's leaving for home right away.
8.	Alingí áyéba likambo níni ezalí.	He wants to know what it is.
9.	Alingí áyéba sǫ́kǫ okokí kosála yangó.	He wants to know if you can do it.
10.	Alingí áyéba sǫ́kǫ osálaka na CEGEÁC.	He wants to know if you work at C.E.G.E.A.C.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Tókęndę kolía.	Let's go eat.
2.	Tókęndę kozwela yé nyama.	Let's go get him some meat.
3.	Tókęndę na ndáko.	Let's go home.

4.	Tólía na ndáko.	Let's eat at home.
5.	Tólía libosó ya kokẹndẹ.	Let's eat before going.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Balingí báloba na yọ́.	They would like to talk to you.
2.	Balingí koloba na yọ́.	They want to talk to you.
3.	Balingí kokẹndẹ na yọ́.	They want to go with you.
4.	Balingí bákẹndẹ na yọ́.	They would like to go with you.
5.	Balingí kolía na yọ́.	They want to eat with you.
6.	Balingí bálía na yọ́.	They would like to eat with you.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Mosálá na yọ́ níni?	What's your occupation?
2.	Mosálá na yọ́ mécanicien.	You are a mechanic.
3.	Mosálá na yọ́ ezalí makási.	Your work is difficult.
4.	Ndáko óyo ezalí makási.	This house is well-built.
5.	Ndáko óyo ezalí ya tatá ya bangó.	This house belongs to their father.
6.	Óyo ndako ya tatá ya bangó.	This is their father's house.
7.	Kẹndẹ́ kolobela tatá ya bangó.	Go talk to their father. Go talk on behalf of their father
8.	Kẹndẹ́ kolobela yé te motu mọ́kọ́ akúfí.	Go tell him a member of his family has died.
9.	Kẹndẹ kotúna yé sọ́kọ́ motu mọ́kọ́ akúfí.	Go ask him if a member of his family has died.
10.	Kẹndẹ kotúna yé sọ́kọ́ azalí na ndáko toó na lopitálo.	Go ask him if she is at home or at the hospital.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1.	Nalingí náloba na yé likambo.	I would like to tell him something.
2.	Nalingí áyáa kotála ngáí.	I want him to come see me.
3.	Nalingí óyébisa yé.	I want you to inform him.
4.	Zilá óyébisa yé.	Wait to advise him.
5.	Zilá ótúna yé.	Wait to ask him.
6.	Alingí ótúna yé.	He wants you to ask her.
7.	Alingí álía sika óyo.	He would like to eat right away.
8.	Atúní álía sika óyo.	He asked to eat right away.
9.	Atúní ngáí náyáa.	He asked me to come.
10.	Batúní ngáí náyáa.	I was asked to come.

Unit 7

Basic Sentences

Na zándo	At the market.

-A-

tẹ́kẹ, -tẹ́ka	to sell
litungúlu, ma-	onion, leek
bóní	how much, how many
1. Tatá, otẹ́ka matungúlu nsambo bóní?	How much are you asking for seven onions? What do you want for seven onions?

-B-

falánga, falánka (franc)	franc(s)
2. Óyo ya minẹ́nẹ falánga zómi na motóbá.	The big ones are sixteen francs.

-A-

bóongó	thus, so, likewise, therefore
3. Bóongó, ya mikẹ́?	And the little ones?

-B-

4. Falánga mwambi.	Eight francs.

-A-

5. Nalingí míbalé ya minẹ́nẹ na mínei ya mikẹ́.	I'd like two big ones and four little ones.

-B-

6. Nákanga motóbá?	Should I wrap up the six?

-A-

7. Ẹ́ẹ.	Yes.

-B-

8. Pésá falánga nsambo.	That will be seven francs.
-sómba	to buy
pilipíli	red pepper; (black pepper)
9. Osómba pilipíli tẹ́?	Don't you want to buy any peppers?
-luka	to hunt, search for
-lukela	to get for someone
mpáta	five-franc piece
matabísi (matabiche)	tip, gratuity, advantage, profit, matabiche, something extra given as an incentive to buy
10. Lukélá ngáí ya malámu, ya mpáta míbalé, ná matabísi.	Pick me out some good ones for ten francs. Also add the matabiche.

-B-

-zónga	to go/come back
11. Lẹlọ́ matabísi ezalí tẹ́, zóngá lóbí.	There's no matabiche today, come back tomorrow.

USEFUL PHRASES

1. Mwású na ngáí akoyáa lẹlọ́ na ntọ́ngọ́.	My wife is coming this morning.
2. Mwású na ngáí akoyáa lẹlọ́ na mpókwa.	My wife is coming this afternoon.

3. Mwásí na ngáí akoyáa lẹlọ́ na butú.	My wife is coming tonight.
4. Mwásí na ngáí akoyáa lẹlọ́ na midí.	My wife is coming at noon.
5. Mwásí na ngaí akoyáa lẹlọ́ na midí ya butú.	My wife is coming at midnight.
6. Mwásí na ngáí akoyáa na mpọ́sọ óyo.	My wife will arrive this week.
7. Mwásí na ngáí akoyáa na sánzá óyo.	My wife will arrive this month.
8. Mwásí na ngáí akoyáa lọ́bí ekoyáa.	My wife will arrive the day after tomorrow.
9. Mwásí na ngáí ayákí lọ́bí elekí.	My wife arrived the day before yesterday.
10. Mwásí na ngáí ayákí na mpọ́sọ elekí.	My wife arrived last week.

ntọ́ngọ́, n-	morning, forenoon (5-11)
midí	noon (11-2)
mpókwa, n-	afternoon (2-6)
butú	night (6-5)
midí ya butú	midnight (11-1)
sánzá	moon, month
-leka	to go past, past by; die; surpass, excel, be more than

7.1 Desiderative

otẹ́ka matungúlu nsambo bóní?

The desiderative is marked by a low tone imperfective suffix and means 'to want to', 'to expect to', 'to care to', /Otẹ́ka matungúlu nsambo bóní?/, 'What do you want for seven onions?', 'What do you *expect to* get for seven onions?', or /olía/, 'Do you want to eat?', 'Would you *care to* eat?', 'Would you *care for* something to eat?', 'You want/would like to eat...'

7.2 Nominalization of Adjectives

Both single-word and phrasal adjectives are nominalized by the particle /ya/, e.g., /ya Monsieur Antoine/, 'Mr. Antoine's', /ya ngáí/, 'mine', and /ya monẹ́nẹ/, 'a big one'. Nominalized adjectives occur in the sentence like any other noun, e.g., /Ya monẹ́nẹ ezali kitọ́kọ/, 'The big one is beautiful'. In the plural, the verb prefix is /bi-/ or sometimes /mi-/, e.g., /Ya minẹ́nẹ *bi*zalí kitọ́kọ/, 'The big ones are beautiful'.

PATTERN DRILL 1

	nání	who
1.	Lobélá ngáí likambo olingí.	Tell me what you want.
2.	Lobélá ngáí *akẹndẹ́kí wápi*.	Tell me where he went.
3.	Lobélá ngáí *azalí wápi*.	Tell me where he is.
4.	Lobélá ngáí *azalí nání*.	Tell me who he is.
5.	Lobélá ngáí *sọ́kọ́ azalí na ndáko*.	Tell me if he is home.
6.	Lobélá ngáí *likambo óyo asálí*.	Tell me what he did.
7.	Lobélá ngáí *sọ́kí olingí kolía*.	Tell me if you want to eat.

8.	Lobélá ngáí, mamá na yọ́ azalí malámu.	Tell me how your mother is.
9.	Lobélá ngáí, okoyáa lóbí na ndáko ya ngáí.	Tell me if you're coming to my house tomorrow.
10.	Lobélá ngáí, oyákí áwa ntángo níni.	Tell me when you arrived.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Nakotẹ́kẹ ndáko na ngáí.	I will sell my house.
2.	Nakotẹ́kẹlẹ yọ́ ndáko na ngáí.	I will sell my house to you.
3.	Nakotẹ́kẹlẹ yọ́ matungúlu.	I will sell you some onions.
4.	Akosómba matungúlu.	He will buy some onions.
5.	Akosómba lọ́sọ na yọ́.	He will buy rice from you.
6.	Bakotíkala na lọ́sọ na yọ́.	They will keep your rice.
7.	Bakotíkala na mbísi na yọ́.	They will look after the fish for you.
8.	Tokosómbela yọ́ mbísi.	We will buy the fish for you.
9.	Tokosómbela yọ́ nsósó.	We will buy the chicken for you.
10.	Akokangela yọ́ nsósó.	He'll wrap up the chicken for you.

QUESTION AND ANSWER DRILL 1

1.	Óyo ya minẹ́nẹ bóní?	How much are the big ones?
	Óyo ya minẹ́ne mpáta mínei.	The big ones are twenty francs.
2.	Óyo ya mikẹ́ bóní?	How much are the small ones?
	Óyo ya mikẹ́ falánga zómi.	The small ones are ten francs.

3.	Nání asómbélí yọ́ matungúlu?	Who paid you for the onions?
	Mwásí óyo asómbélí ngáí matungúlu.	This woman paid me for the onions.
4.	Ntángo nini asómbélí yọ́ matungúlu?	When did she pay you for the onions?
	Asómbélí ngáí yangó lóbí.	She paid me for them yesterday.
5.	Osómbákí nini?	What did you buy?
	Nasómbákí pilipíli.	I bought some peppers.
6.	Matabísi nini olingí ópésa ngáí?	What matabiche will (would) you give me?
	Nalingí nápésa yọ́ pilipíli misátu.	I'll (I'd) give you three peppers.
7.	Olingí nápésa yọ́ bóní?	How many would you like?
	Nalingí ópésa ngáí zómi.	I'd like ten.
8.	Nákanga yangó?	Should I wrap them?
	Sọ́kọ́ olingí, kangá yangó.	Please wrap them.
9.	Osómbákí nyama yangó ntangú níni?	When did you buy that meat?
	Nasómbákí yangó lẹlọ́.	I bought it today.
10.	Nakokí kosómba pilipíli zómi falánga bóní?	How much will ten peppers cost?
	Okokí kosómba falánga zómi na míbalé.	You can buy (them) for twelve francs.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

etabe, bi-	banana
lilála, ma-	orange
madę́su	beans
mbálá, m-	potato

1. Mwásí azalí na madę́su ya minę́nę.	The woman has large beans.
2. Nasómbákí madę́su ya minę́nę.	I bought some large beans.
3. Nasómbákí bitabe ná matungúlu.	I bought some bananas and some onions.
4. Mwána mobáli azalákí kotę́ka bitabe ná matungúlu.	The boy was selling bananas and onions.
5. Mwána mobáli azalákí kotę́ka pilipíli.	The boy was selling peppers.
6. Moto mǫ́kǫ akangélí ngáí pilipíli.	Someone wrapped up the peppers for me.
7. Moto mǫ́kǫ atę́kę́lí yé malála ya malámu.	Somebody sold him some nice oranges.
8. Lukélá ngáí malála ya malámu.	Pick me out some nice oranges.
9. Lukélá ngáí mbálá ya minénę.	Pick me out some large potatoes.
10. Nákanga mbálá ya minę́nę?	Shall I wrap up the large potatoes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Ósómbela ngáí matungúlu ya mpáta míbalé.	Buy me ten franc's worth of onions.
2. Ósómbela ngáí mbísi na magazíni.	Buy me some fish at the store.

3.	Naákozila yǫ́ na magazíni.	I'll be waiting for you at the store.
4.	Naákozila yǫ́ na ndáko ya Pólo.	I'll be waiting for you at Paul's house.
5.	Alingí ásómba ndáko ya Pólo.	He would like to buy Paul's house.
6.	Alingí ásómba madę́su na yǫ́ nyǫ́nsǫ.	He'd like to buy all of your beans.
7.	Akokí kosómba madę́su na yǫ́ nyǫ́nsǫ.	He can sell all of your beans.
8.	Akokí kosómba lǫ́sǫ na tatá ngáí.	He can sell the rice to my father.
9.	Akokákí kotę́ke ya mikę́ tę́.	He couldn't sell the little ones.
10.	Akokákí kokanga ya minę́nę tę́.	He couldn't wrap up the big ones.

PATTERN DRILL 2

1.	Lukélá ngáí mísátu ya malámu.	Pick me out three good ones.
2.	Lukélá ngáí mínei ya minę́nę.	Pick me out four big ones.
3.	Lukélá ngáí mítánu ya mikę́.	Pick me out five little ones.
4.	Kangélá ngáí mítánu ya mikę́.	Wrap me up five little ones.
5.	Ósómbela ngáí mítánu ya mikę́.	Sell me five little ones.
6.	Ósómbela ngáí matungúlu ya mpáta mibalé.	Sell me the onion for ten francs.
7.	Ósómbela ngáí yangó lóbí.	Buy them for me tomorrow.
8.	Osómbélí ngáí yangó lóbí.	You bought them for me yesterday.

9.	Nalingí nápésa yọ yangó lóbí.	I'd like to give them to you tomorrow.
10.	Nalingí ópésa ngáí falánga zómi.	I want you to give me ten francs.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1.	Olía etabe?	Would you care for a banana?
	Ẹẹ, nalía etabe.	Yes, I'd like a banana.
2.	Otẹ́ka madẹ́su tẹ́?	Don't you want to sell the beans?
	Tọ́, kási natẹ́ka malála.	No, but I'd like to sell the oranges.
3.	Oyáa na ngáí na Kisangani?	Do you want to go to Stanleyville with me?
	Ẹẹ, nalingí koyáa na yọ́ na Kisangáni.	Yes, I'd like to go to Stanleyville with you.
4.	Asómba mbálá?	Would he like to buy some potatoes?
	Ẹẹ, asómba mbálá.	Yes, he'd like to buy some potatoes.

7.3 Interrogative relative pronouns

Lobélá ngáí akẹndẹ́kí wápi.

Interrogative relative pronouns occur at the end of the subordinate clause, e.g., /Lobélá ngáí akẹndẹ́kí wápi/, 'Tell me where he went', literally, 'Tell me he went where.'

7.4 Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses

Lobélá ngáí, oyákí áwa ntángo nini.

There is a potential juncture, i.e., optional pause, between

the main and subordinate clauses. This juncture is marked by a comma / , /. The juncture nearly always occurs if the subordinate clause has more than about seven or eight syllables.

7.5 /-tíkala/ Plus Object

Bakotíkala na lọ́sọ na yọ́.

/-tíkala/ has the particle /na/ if followed by an object, e.g., /Bakotíkala na lọ́sọ na yọ́/, 'They will keep your rice.'

7.6 Please

Sọ́kọ́ olingí, kangá yangó.

/Sọ́kọ́ olingí,/, 'If you are willing', is used for politeness, much like English 'Please,', or French 's'il vous plait'.

Unit 8

Basic Sentences

	NA POMPI YA ESSENCE	AT THE FILLING STATION
	-A-	
	-tíya	to put, put in, set, pour in
	-tíela, -tíyela, -tíla	to put for (someone)
	'litre'	liter
	'essence'	gasoline
1.	Mwána, tíélá ngáí litres mítánu ya essence, sọ́kọ́ olingí.	Boy, put in five liters of gasoline for me, please.
	-B-	
	méyá, loméyá	50-centime piece
2.	Pésá mpáta míbalé na méyá.	That will be 12.5 francs (12,5F.).
	-A-	
	mafúta	oil, grease, fat
	mái	water
3.	Na nsima tálá mafúta ná mái.	After that, look at the oil and water.
	-B-	
	ái	oh, hey
	-síla	to finish, be done, finished
4.	Ái, mafúta esílí.	Hey, there's no oil.

-A-

linzanza, ma-	metal box, tin can, iron sheet
5. Tíyá linzanza mọ́kọ́ ya ntúkú mítánu centilitres.	Put in a 50-centiliter can.

-B-

lisúsu	again, besides, else, other
6. Bóongó na nsima násála lisúsu níni?	What else can I do for you?

-A-

-bọngọ, -bọnga	to be suitable, be in order, come along well
-bọngisa	to put in order, arrange, prepare, repair, straighten, organize
lokolo, ma-	leg, foot; tire, wheel
wáná, wáaná	that; there
-zánga	to be lacking, miss, be without; be absent, skip, miss, omit
mopẹpẹ, mi-	air, wind
7. Óbọngisa lokolo wáná ya nsima ezángí mopẹ́pẹ.	Fix that back tire that is flat. Have that back tire fixed that is flat.

-B-

8. Bóongó, okozila mwáa mokẹ́.	All right, (but) you will (have to) wait a little while.

-A-

9. Tẹ nakeí, nakozónga na nsima.	No, I'm leaving, I'll come back later.

USEFUL PHRASES

Ayébí kotámbwisa mótuka.	He knows how to drive.
Ayébí epáí bakokí kozwá ebendé ya mótuka.	He knows where you can get automobile parts.
Ayébí ndéngé ya kobǫngisa mótuka.	He knows how to repair automobiles.
Ayébí likambo ntína.	He understands the matter.
Nasílí kosukola mótuka.	I've already washed the car.
Nasílí nasukólí mótuka.	I've just now finished washing the car.
Naútí kosukola mótuka.	I've just this instant finished washing the car.
Mésa óyo ebǫngí na ngáí.	This table is suitable for me.
Bilambá óyo bibǫngí na ngáí.	These clothes look good on me.
Kíti óyo ebǫngí na mésa wáná.	This chair goes well with that table.
Kangá mótuka.	Lock the car.
Kangólá mótuka.	Unlock the car.
Sémbólá Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yǫ́.	Look after Lingala, and Lingala will look after you.
	Use good Lingala, and Lingala will serve you well.

-támbola	to take a walk, travel move, make progress, hurry up
-támbwisa	to cause to progress, drive a car, spread put in motion, start

mótuka, mi-	automobile, truck
epáí, bi-	side; part; direction; district; where
ebendé, bi-	piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
ntína, n-	root; basis; meaning reason, significance, principle
ntína na	because of, on account of, therefore
-sukola	to wash, clean; tell someone off
-úta	to come from, be on the way from
útá (see Note 8.9.)	from, since
mésa	table
kíti	chair
-kangola	to release, let go of, loose, open, unroll, unlock, unfasten
-sémba	to extend, be right, be upright
-sémbola	to put right, straighten up, make vertical

NOTES

8.1 Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision.

/y/ between vowels is often elided, e.g., /-tíyela/, 'to put for someone,' is often /-tíela/.

/e/ after /i/ is often elided, e.g., /-tíela/ is often /-tíla/.

8.2 Reversive

The reversive extension /-ol-/ has two functions: (1) negative, and (2) directive. (1) The negative reversive indicates the *opposite* or *negative* of the verb base, e.g., /-kanga/, 'to fasten', 'lock', 'hold', /-kangola/, 'to unfasten', 'unlock', 'release'. (2) The directive reversive indicates direction *away from* or *off of*, e.g., /-kaba/, 'to give', 'state', 'divide', 'shave', /-kabola/, 'to hand out', 'distribute', 'divide up', 'separate' /-palola/, 'to skin', 'peel', 'scrape (off)', /-pasola/ 'to tear (off)', 'cleave', 'split (off)', 'saw', 'clear (away)', /-papola/, 'to make thinner', 'shave off', 'remove an excess'.

8.3 Reversive Stative

The extension /-w-/ before a vowel or /-u-/ before a consonant marks *existence* in the *reverse state* of the base, e.g., /-kangwa/, 'to be open(ed)', 'be unlocked', or /-sémbwa/, 'to be in an upright position', -pasuka/, 'be worn out'. Though the reversive stative suffix occurs with many common bases, the student should avoid using stems with it that he has not previously seen because it is incompatible with many bases and occurs with many others only in combination with certain other extensions. This will be studied further in Notes 13.1 and 13.2.

8.4 Derived Stems Without Simple Stems

There are many derived stems, i.e., base plus verbal extensions, for which there is no corresponding simple stem, i.e., base without verbal extension(s), e.g., /-yékola/, 'to study; /*-yéka/ does not occur. Because of this the student should not make analogical back formations of simple stems from derived stems. This is especially true of derived stems with /-ol-/ or /-w-/.

8.5 Causative

Óbọngisa lokolo wáná.

The causative extension /-is-/ means 'to cause to do', 'to make someone do', 'have someone do', e.g., /Óbọngisa lokolo wána/, 'Fix that tire', 'Have that tire fixed', 'Make someone fix that tire'.

When /-is-/ occurs after a reversive extension, some stems take /-ol-/ as the reversive, others take /-w-/, and others take both with different meanings, e.g., /-támbwisa/, 'to drive a car', but /-tåmbolisa/, 'to take a person for a walk'. In general, /-ol-/ is used with animate objects and /-w-/ is used with inanimate objects, but there are many exceptions.

8.6 Degree of Immediate Past

In Note 2.5. the immediate past was characterized as something that has 'just' happened, but it was also shown that the period of time covered by the immediate past is often somewhat longer than what we mean in English by 'just' happened, e.g., /Nasílí kosukola mótuka/, 'I've already washed the car', 'I've just washed the car'. This could even mean several days ago. To indicate that something has been done in the last five or ten minutes or so, one uses /Nasílí nasukólí mótuka/, I've just now finished washing the car'. But to indicate even more immediateness, one uses /Naúti kosukola mótuka/, 'I've just this instant finished washing the car', literally 'I have come from washing the car', i.e., 'the last thing I did before the moment of speaking was wash the car'.

8.7 Proverb Concordance

Sémbólá Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yọ́.

Proverbs are a literary form very highly regarded in Africa. In Lingala proverbs, subject prefixes to the verb take the literary style of prefix concordances, e.g., in the proverb above the literary form /likosémbola/ occurs and not the usual form /ekosémbola/. Compare Note 4.2.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Na nsima tálá mafúta.	After that, look at the oil.
2.	Na libosó tálá mafúta.	Before that, look at the oil.
3.	Na libosó mwána atí linzanza mọ́kọ ya ntúkú mitánu ya mafúta.	Before that, the boy put in a 50-centiliter can of oil.
4.	Nalobélí mwána átíya linzanza mọ́kọ ya ntúku mitánu centilitre ya mafúta.	I told the boy to put in a 50-centiliter can of oil.
5.	Nalobélí mwána átiya litres ntúkú mibalé ya essence.	I told the boy to put in twenty liters of gasoline.
6.	Motu wáná alingí litres ntúkú mibalé ya essence.	That man wants twenty liters of gasoline.
7.	Motu wáná alingí bóbọngisela yé lokolo ya mótuka.	That man wants to have his tire fixed.
8.	Tatá na yé alingí bóbọngisela yé lokolo ya mótuka.	His father wants to have his tire repaired.

9. Tatá na yé alingí názila yé.	His father wants me to wait for him.
10. Mwásí na ngáí alingí názila yé.	My wife wants me to wait for her.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

Answer the questions according to the cues.

1. Okẹndẹkí ntángo níni?	What time did you leave?
Nakẹndẹkí na ngonga ya mínei.	I left at four o'clock.
2. Osálaka níni na ntóngó?	What do you do in the morning?
Nayékolaka na ntóngó.	I study mornings.
3. Oyákí mọkọlọ níni na Leó?	When did you arrive in Leopoldville?
Nayákí na mpọsọ elekí.	I arrived last week.
4. Násala níni na nsósó óyo etikálí?	What should I do with the rest of the chicken?
Pésá yé nsósó óyo etikálí.	Give him the rest of the chicken.
5. Bozalákí koloba níni?	What were you talking about?
Tozalákí koloba likambo ya básí.	We are talking about women.
6. Balingí litres bóní ya essence?	How many liters of gasoline do they want?
Balingí litres ntúkú mísátu ya essence.	They want thirty liters of gasoline.
7 Falánga bóní apésí na mwásí?	How many francs did he give the woman?

	Apésí yé nkámá mǫkǫ́.	He gave her one hundred.
8.	Otíkí lokolo na mótuka wápi?	Where did you leave the tire?
	Natíkí yangó na esíká ya kotęka essence.	I left it at the filling station.
9.	Obandí mosálá?	Have you started working?
	Nabandí mosálá útá ngonga ya mǫkǫ́.	I started working at one o'clock. I have been working since one o'clock.
10.	Obandí mosálá ntángu níni?	How long have you been working?
	Nabandí mosálá útá ngonga mǫkǫ́.	I have been working for one hour.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Natíísí yé mafúta na mótuka.	I had him put some oil in the car.
2.	Natíísí yé litres ntúkú mísátu ya essence.	I had him put in thirty litres of gasoline.
3.	Natíísí yé lokolo ya sika na mótuka.	I had him put a new tire on my car.
4.	Tosómbákí lokolo ya sika na mótuka.	We bought a new tire for the car.
5.	Tosómbákí makolo na mótuka.	We bought some tires for the car.
6.	Abǫngísélákí bísú makolo ya mótuka.	He repaired the tires for us.
7.	Abǫngísélákí bísú mótuka ntángu tozalákí komęla Coca-Cola.	He repaired the car for us while we were drinking a Coke.

8.	Abọngíséláki bísú mótuka ntángu tozaláki kozila.	He repaired the car for us while we were waiting.
9.	Abọngíséláki bísú mótuka ntángu tozaláki kolía midí.	He repaired the car for us while we had lunch.
10.	Abọngíséláki bísú mótuka ntángu mbúla ezaláki konọkọ.	He repaired the car for us while it was raining.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Alobákí na mwána áloba lisúsu.	She told the child to say it again.
2.	Alobákí na mwána ákanga ndáko.	She told the child to close the door.
3.	Akangísákí ndáko na mwána.	She had the child close the door. She had the door closed by the child.
4.	Akangísákí búuku na bána.	She had the children close their books.
5.	Bapésákí búuku na bána.	They gave the children some books.
6.	Bapésákí bínú miníti zómi mpó na kosílisa mosálá.	They gave you ten minutes to finish the job.
7.	Bapésákí ngáí mótuka mosúsu ya kotámbwisa.	They gave me another car to drive.
8.	Nalingí mótuka mosúsu ya kotámbwisa.	I need another car to drive.
9.	Nalingí essence na linzanza óyo.	I want some gasoline in this can.
10.	Tíéla ngáí litres zómi ya essence na lizanza óyo.	Put ten liters of gasoline in this can for me.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Nasílí kobọngisela mobáli óyo lokolo ya mótuka.	I've already repaired the tire for the man.
2.	Nasílí nabọngíséli mobáli óyo lokolo ya mótuka.	I've just now finished repairing the tire for the man.
3.	Naútí kobọngisela mobáli óyo lokolo ya mótuka.	I've just this instant finished repairing the tire for the man.
4.	Naútí kotíya litres mítánu ya essence na mótuka.	I've just this instant finished putting five liters of gasoline in the car.
5.	Nasílí kotíya litres mítánu ya essence na mótuka.	I've already put five liters of gasoline in the car.
6.	Nasílí natíí litres mítánu ya essence na mótuka.	I've just now put five liters of gasoline in the car.
7.	Nasílí natálí mafúta na máí.	I've just now looked at the oil and water.
8.	Nasílí kotála mafúta na máí.	I've already looked at the oil and the water.
9.	Naútí kotála mafúta na máí.	I've just this instant looked at the oil and the water.
10.	Naútí kosukola mótuka.	I've just this instant finished washing the car.

PATTERN DRILL 1

1.	Ayébí kobọngisa mótuka.	He knows how to repair cars.
2.	Ayébí elọ́kọ akosála.	He knows what to do.
3.	Ayébí kotámbwisa mótuka.	He knows how to drive.

4.	Ayébí likambo níni ezalí.	He knows what's the matter.
5.	Ayébí epáí bakokí kozwá ebendé ya mótuka.	He knows where to get parts for automobiles.
6.	Ayébí mọkọlọ níni akozónga na Leó.	He knows what day she returns to Leopoldville.
7.	Ayébí mpó na níni batu batíkí mosálá.	He knows why the men stopped working.
8.	Ayébí ntángu níni bakeí.	He knows when they left.
9.	Ayébí ndéngé níni bakokí kófungola mọnọkọ ya ndáko.	He know how to unlock the door.
10.	Ayébí na ngonga bóní bakokí kosílisa mosálá.	He knows how fast it can be done.
11.	Ayébí likambo ntína.	He comprehends the problem.

8.8 Non-aplicative Verbs With Two Objects.

Pésá yé nsósó óyo etíkálí.

Certain verbs, such as /-pésá/, 'to give', take two objects even though the verb doesn't have the applicative extension, e.g., /Pésá yé nsósó óyo etíkálí/, 'Give him the rest of the chicken'.

8.9 Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative.

Nabandí mosálá útá ngonga ya mọkọ.

Certain verbs indicating stopping, starting, origin, or destination, are used in the imperative to mark the beginning or end of an interval of time or space, e.g., the sentence above, 'I hav been working since one o'clock', literally, 'I started working begin(ning) one o'clock'.

Unit 9

Basic Sentences

-A-	
1. Olingí mosálá?	Are you looking for work?
-B-	
2. Nalingí.	I am.
-A-	
3. Oyébí mosálá níni?	What do you know how to do?
-B-	
-ngoma	to iron, press
4. Kolámba, kobọngisa ndáko, kosukola bilambá, mpé kongoma.	Cooking, house work, washing, and ironing.
-A-	
5. Malámu, mosálá na yọ́ kosukola bilambá.	Fine, your job (will be) the laundry.
6. Nakopésa yọ́ na sánzá nkóto mọ́kọ́. Olingí?	I will give you one thousand francs per month. Is that satisfactory?
-B-	
7. Elekí mokẹ́, bakísá lisúsu nkámá misátu.	That's too little, add three hundred francs more.
8. Sọ́kọ́ osálí malámu, bóongó nakobákisa.	If you do good work, I'll increase you.
9. Olingí kobanda mosálá lóbí?	Do you want to start to work tomorrow?

-B-

10. Tę́, kási nalingí kobanda mosálá lóbí ekoyáa.	No, but I want to start the day after tomorrow.

-A-

tíí, téé, tí	until; a long time; far
11. Malámu, mosálá na yǫ́ ekozala útá ngonga ya nsambo ya ntóngó, tée na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa.	Good, your working hours will be from 7:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M.
12. Kokómaka nsima ya ntángu tę́.	Don't get in the habit of being late.

-B-

13. Tę́, nakoyáa na ntángu malámu.	No, I won't. I'll be on time.

USEFUL PHRASES

Límbísá ngáí.	Excuse me. Pardon me.
Lekísá ngáí.	Let me pass. Let me by.
Látá bilambá mpę́mbę́.	Put on clean clothes.
Longólá bilambá mbíndu na nzótu.	Take off your dirty clothes.
Longwá!	Scram! Get lost!
Tandá mbétu.	Make the bed.
Tandá mésa.	Set the table.
Sukólá basáni.	Wash the dishes.
Sukólá tási na sáni ya tási.	Wash the cup and saucer.
Sukólá kǫ́pǫ na lútu.	Wash the glass and spoon.

Sukólá mbẹ́li, kánya, na nkelé.	Wash the knives, forks, and spoons.
Kitísélá ngáí sandúku na nsé.	Send my suitcase down.
Mẹmẹ́lẹ́ ngáí sandúku na nsé.	Bring my suitcase down.
Mẹmẹ́lẹ́ ngáí sandúku na likoló.	Bring my suitcase up.
Butísélá ngáí sandúku na likoló.	Send my suitcase up.
Butísélá ngáí sumé na sabóni.	Send me up some towels and soap.
Komẹla likáyá tẹ́.	No smoking.
Kokọ́ta tẹ́.	Do not enter.

-límbisa	to forgive, pardon, excuse
-láta	to dress, put on clothes
nzótu, nzóto, n-	body
-tanda	to spread, stretch out
mésa	table
mbétu, mbéto, m-	bed, pallet
sáni, ba-	dish, bowl, plate, basin
tási (tasse)	cup
kọ́pọ	glass, tumbler, cup
lútu	spoon
mbẹlí	knife
kanya, nkánya, (n-)	fork
lokelé, n-	spoon
-kita	to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish
sandúku, (ba-)	box, chest, trunk, suitcase,
nsé, n-	earth, world; bottom; down, under, beneath

-me̩me̩	to carry, transport
-buta	to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase
sumé (essuie-main)	towel, wash cloth
sabóni (savon)	soap
likáyá, ma-	tobacco, cigarette, cigar

NOTES

9.1 Comparison of Intensity

The 'comparison' of intensity, i.e., 'to be very', 'to be too', is expressed by the verb /-leka/, e.g., /Elekí moké̩/, 'It is too little', 'It's very small', literally 'It surpasses smallness'. See also Note 15.3.

9.2 Definite Condition

Só̩kó̩ osálí malámu, nakobákisa.

If a proposition is true or affirmed to be true, the if-clause has the immediate past and the result clause the future, e.g., /Só̩kó̩ osálí malámu, nakobákisa/, 'If you do good work, (then it is certain that) I'll raise your pay'.

9.3 General Prohibitions

Kokómaka nsima ya ntángu té̩.
Kome̩la likáyá té̩.

The combination of an infinitive plus /té̩/ is used for general prohibitions, e.g., /Kome̩la likáyá té̩/, 'No smoking'.

9.4 Special Meanings of Derived Stems

okokí kote̩kisa yangó

Derived stems often have a specialized meaning that cannot be guessed and therefore must be learned as a vocabulary item, e.g., /Kote̩kisa/, 'to resell at a profit', as in /So̩kí obo̩ngísí ndáko óyo, okokí kote̩kisa yangó/, 'If you have this house repaired, you can resell it at a profit'.

9.5 /téé/ Followed by /na/

téé na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa

When preceding a temporal phrase, /téé/ is followed by /na/, as in the phrase above, 'until 5:00 P.M.'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Osukólákí lisúsu bilambá?	Have you washed the clothes yet?
2.	Nasílí nasukólákí bilambá.	I have just finished washing the clothes.
3.	Nasílí kobo̩ngisa ndáko.	I've already straightened up the house.
4.	Lobélá yé ábo̩ngisa ndáko.	Tell him to straighten up the the house.
5.	Lobélá yé ángoma bilambá sika óyo.	Tell him to press the clothes right away.
6.	Lobá na yé só̩ko̩ alingí kongoma bilambá sika óyo.	Ask him if he can press the clothes right away.
7.	Lobá na yé só̩ko̩ alingí koyáa le̩ló̩ na mpókwa.	Ask him if he can come this afternoon.

8.	Oyébí sọ́kọ́ akoyáa lẹlọ́ na mpókwa?	Do you know if he can come this afternoon?
9.	Oyébí sọ́kọ́ azalí lisúsu na ndáko na yé?	Do you know if he is home yet?
10.	Ayébí tẹ́, sọ́kọ́ azalí lisúsu na ndáko na yé.	He doesn't know if he is still home.

PATTERN DRILL 1

1.	Sọ́kọ́ oyéí lẹlọ́, nakopésa yọ́ nkámá mọ́kọ́.	If you come today, I'll give you one hundred francs.
2.	Sọ́kí osómbí mọ́kọ́, nakopésa yọ́ nkámá mọ́kọ́.	If you buy one, I'll give you one hundred francs.
3.	Sọ́kí osómbí mọ́kọ́, bakobọngisa mosúsu.	If you buy one, I'll have the other repaired.
4.	Sọ́kí obọngísí ndáko óyo, bakobọngisa mosúsu.	If you have this house repaired, they will repair the other one.
5.	Sọ́kí obọngísí ndáko óyo, okokí kotẹ́kisa yangó.	If you have this house repaired, you can resell it at a profit.
6.	Sọ́kọ́ ozilí sánzá mọ́kọ́, okokí kotẹ́kisa yangó.	If you wait a month, you can sell them at a profit.
7.	Sọ́kí ozilí sánzá mọ́kọ́, okokẹndẹ na Leó.	If you wait a month, you can go to Leopoldville.
8.	Sọ́kí ozalí na nkóto mọ́kọ́, okokẹndẹ na Leó.	If you have a thousand francs, you can go to Leopoldville.
9.	Sọ́kí ozalí na nkóto mọ́kọ́, okokí kosómba bilambá.	If you have a thousand francs, you can buy some clothes.
10.	Sọ́kọ́ okeí na Leó, okokí kosómba bilambá.	If you go to Leopoldville, you can buy some clothes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Mosálá na bísú esílaka na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa.	We get off from work at 5:00 P.M.
2.	Mosálá na bísú esílí na ntángu malámu.	We finished our work early.
3.	Tokómí na ndáko na ntángu malámu.	We arrived home early.
4.	Tokómí na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konọ́kọ.	We arrived home before it started to rain.
5.	Tosílísákí kosómba bilọ́kọ́ libosó mbúla ébanda konọ́kọ.	We finished shopping before it started to rain
6.	Tosílísákí kosómba bilọ́kọ́ mpé tokeí na ndáko.	We finished shopping and went home.
7.	Mosálá ekokákí na bísú nyọ́nsọ tẹ́ ntína na yangó tokeí na ndáko.	There weren't enough jobs for all of us, and therefore we went home.
8.	Mosálá elekákí makási ntína na yangó tokeí na ndáko.	The work was too hard, and because of that we came home.
9.	Mosálá elekákí makási ntángu ya komẹla likáyá ezalákí tẹ́.	The work is so hard that there isn't (even) time to smoke.
10.	Mosálá elekákí makási ntángu ya kolía ezalákí tẹ́.	There's so much work that there isn't (even) time to eat.

1

GRAMMATICAL DRILLS 3

1.	Bọi akangólélí ngáí ndáko.	The houseboy opened the door for me.
2.	Bọi asukólélí ngáí bilambá.	The houseboy washed my clothes.
3.	Nasukólélísí bọi bilambá.	I had the boy wash my clothes.
4.	Nasukólélísí bọi bilambá ya mbétu.	I had the boy wash the sheets.
5.	Angomísélí bọi bilambá ya mbétu.	She had the boy iron the sheets.
6.	Angomísélí yé elambá ya mésa.	She had him iron the tablecloth.
7.	Alongolákí elambá ya mésa.	She put away the table cloth.
8.	Alongólákí basání ya sika.	She put away the new dishes.
9.	Azóngísákí basání ya sika.	She put back the new dishes.
10.	Akamátákí basání ya sika.	She got out the new dishes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Longólísa bána bilambá mbíndu na nzótu.	Have the children take off their dirty clothes.
2.	Longólísá bána bilambá mpẹ́mbẹ na nzótu.	Have the children take off their clean clothes.
3.	Látísá bána bilambá mpẹmbẹ́.	Have the children put on their clean clothes.
4.	Látísá mamá mpẹtẹ na yé.	Have mother wear her ring.
5.	Mẹmẹ́lẹ mamá mpẹtẹ na yé.	Bring mother her ring.
6.	Mẹmẹ́lẹ ngáí sandúku na likoló.	Bring my suitcase up.

7.	Butísélá ngáí sandúku na likoló.	Have my suitcase brought up.
8.	Butísélá ngáí sumé na sabóni.	Send me some towels and soap.
9.	Mẹmẹlẹ́ ngáí sumé na sabóni.	Bring me some towels and soap.
10.	Kitísélá ngáí sumé na saboni na nsé.	Send me down some towels and soap.

PATTERN DRILL 2

1.	Naútí (na) mosálá.	I'm just returning from work. I'm on my home from work. I've just returned from work.
2.	Naúti kosálá.	I've just returned from work.
3.	Naúti (na) Kinsásá.	I've just come from Leopoldville. I'm on my way from Leopoldville.
4.	Nakomí (na) Kinsásá.	I've arrived from Leopoldville. I've come from Leopoldville.
5.	Nakeí (na) Kinsásá.	I'm leaving for Leopoldville. I'm on the way to Leopoldville. I'm going to Leopoldville.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1.	Nalingí bólongola mafúta ya libosó bótíya ya sika.	I want the oil changed.
2.	Nalingí kotámbolisa mwána na ngáí ya mobáli.	I want to take my son for a walk.

3.	Nalingí kokẹndẹ kotámbola na mótuka.	I want to go for a drive.
4.	Nalingí kotámbwisa mótuka ya mwána na ngáí ya mwásí.	I want to drive my daughter's car.
5.	Nalingí motu mọ́kọ́ ásukola mótuka.	I want someone to wash my car.

9.6 /libosó/ Plus Subjunctive

Tokómí na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konọ́kọ.

When nouns such as /libosó/, 'front', are used to introduce temporal clauses, the verb of the temporal clause is in the subjuntive, as in the sentence above, 'We arrived home before it started rain'.

Unit 10

Basic Sentences

-A-	
1. Aló! (allô)	Hello.
-B-	
2. Aló, náni wáná?	Hello, who's speaking?
-A-	
3. Ngaí, Bonifási.	This is Boniface.
-B-	
4. Díi, Bonifási, olingí níni?	Hi, Boniface, what do you want?
-A-	
-tínda	to send, order, command
5. Nalingí ótíndela ngáí búuku na yọ ya Lingála.	I'd like you to send me your Lingala book.
-B-	
6. Bóongó ya yọ, otíkí wápi?	Where did you leave yours?
-A-	
-bósana	to forget; be mistaken, make a mistake
kelási (classe)	class, classroom, school
7. Nabósání yangó na kelási.	I forgot and left it in the classroom.

	-B-	
8.	Bóni, nakotíndela yọ́ yangó na mwána.	Boni, I'll send it to you by my little brother.
	-A-	
9.	Melesí.	Thanks.
	-B-	
10.	Likambo tẹ́.	Don't mention it.
	-A-	
11.	Ẹ́ẹ, kokanga naínu tẹ́!	Hey, don't hang up yet!
12.	Okẹndẹ wápi lẹlọ́ na mpókwa?	Where are you planning on going this evening?
	-B-	
	-kana	to resolve, intend, promise, threaten
	-kanisa	to think, reflect,
	sinemá (cinéma)	movies
13.	Nakanísí (te) nakokẹndẹ na sinemá lẹlọ́ na mpókwa.	I think I'll go to the movies this evening.
	-A-	
14.	Olingí tókẹndẹ bísú míbalé?	Would you like for me to go with you?
	-B-	
	-bima	to go out, come out, go for a walk, emerge
15.	Ẹ́ẹ, nalingí, nakobima na ngonga ya mwambi.	Yes, of course, I'm leaving at eight o'clock.

-A-

16. Na ntángu mosúsu.	See you then.
17. Malámu.	Fine.

USEFUL PHRASES

Yóká (na) tęlęfǫ́n.	Answer the phone.
Kangá tęlęfǫ́n.	Hang up the phone.
Zóngísá (na) tęlęfǫ́n.	Hang up the phone.
Béngá yé na tęlęfǫ́n.	Call him up.
Baákobénga yǫ́ na tęlęfǫ́n.	You're wanted on the phone.
Bę́tę́lá yé singa.	Call him up.
Tęlęfǫ́n ezalí kobę́tę.	The telephone is ringing.
Mondę́lę́ abę́tí ngonga.	The European rang the bell.
Mondę́lę́ azalí kobę́tę masíni.	The European is typing.
Mondę́lę́ azalí kobę́tę mabǫ́kǫ.	The European is clapping his hands.
Móndę́lę́ azalí kobę́tę mái.	The European is swimming.
Móndę́lę́ azalí kobę́tę bondíki.	The European is shooting a gu
Nkómbó na yǫ́ náni?	What's your name?
Nkómbó na ngáí Ngói.	My name is Ngoi.
Bapési yé Mǫnǫkǫmolaí.	They nicknamed him Big Mouth.
tęlęfǫ́n (téléphone)	telephone
-bénga	to call, summon; call, name; order (merchandise)
-bę́tę, -bę́ta	to hit, strike, knock, beat
singa	cord, rope, wire, cable, band, belt

mondę́lę́, mi-	white man, European
masíni (machine)	machine, mechanical instrument, train
bondóki, ma-	gun, rifle
nkómbó, n-	name, honor, reputation
molaí, mi-	long, large, deep, high

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Natíndí mwána mpó na búuku.	I sent the boy for the book.
2.	Natíndí búuku na mwána.	I sent the book to the boy.
3.	Nakotíndela yǫ búuku na mwána.	I'll send the book to you by the boy.
4.	Nakotíndela yǫ́ búuku lóbí na ntóngó.	I'll send the book to you in the morning.
5.	Natíndélákí yǫ búuku lóbí na ntóngó.	I sent the book to you yesterday morning.
6.	Natíndélákí yǫ́ matungúlu lóbí.	I sent you the onions yesterday.
7.	Natíndákí yǫ́ ósómbela ngáí matungúlu lóbí.	I sent you to buy me some onions yesterday.
8.	Natíndákí yǫ́ ósómbela ngáí linzanza ya nyama.	I sent you to buy a can of meat for me yesterday.
9.	Akosómbela yé linzanza ya nyama.	He will buy a can of meat for her.
10.	Akosómbela yé ndáko.	He will buy the house for her.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Nabósání ndáko na yé.	I've forgotten where his house is located.
2.	Nabósání, yé náni.	I've forgotten who he is.
3.	Nabósání ntángu níni tokómi?	I forgot what time it is.
4.	Nabósání nkómbó na yé.	I've forgotten his name.
5.	Nabósání bána na yé.	I forgot about his children.
6.	Nabósání ndínga alobaka.	I've forgotten what language he speaks.
7.	Nabósání mosálá na yé.	I've forgotten what he does (for a living).
8.	Nabósání nọ́kọ́ na yé.	I've forgotten who his uncle is.
9.	Nabósání epáí nátíkí búuku.	I've forgotten where I left my book.
10.	Nabósání epáí ekeí.	I've forgotten where he went.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Nakobima na ngonga ya motóbá.	I'm going out at six o'clock.
2.	Mwásí na ngáí akokóma na ngonga ya motóbá.	My wife will arrive at six o'clock.
3.	Mwásí na ngáí akokóma na Leó lẹlọ́ na mpọ́kwa.	My wife will arrive in Leopoldville this evening.
4.	Bakotíka Leó lẹlọ́ na mpọ́kwa.	We will leave Leopoldville this evening. (impersonal we)
5.	Bakotíka Brazzaville na ngonga ya mọ́kọ́ na ntóngó.	We will leave Brazzaville at 11:00 A.M. (impersonal we)

6.	Bána na ngáí bazaláki na Brazzaville na ngonga ya mọkọ na ntóngó.	My children were at Brazzaville at 1:00 A.M.
7.	Bána na ngáí bazaláki kokẹndẹ ntángo nakómákí.	My children were leaving when I arrived.
8.	Bakangákí ndáko ntángo nakómákí.	The house was locked up when I arrived.
9.	Bakangákí ndáko mpé motu azalákí tẹ́.	The house was locked and no one was there.
10.	Natúní kási motu azalákí tẹ́.	I called out, but no one was there.

PATTERN DRILL 1

1.	Sọ́kọ́ oyákí lẹlọ́, mbẹlẹ napésákí yọ́ nkámá mọkọ́.	If you had come today, I would have given you a thousand francs.
2.	Sọ́kí osómbákí mọkọ́, mbẹlẹ napésákí yọ́ nkámá mọkọ́.	If you had bought one, I would have given you a thousand francs.
3.	Sọ́kí osómbákí mọkọ́, mbẹlẹ babọngísákí mosúsu.	If you had bought one, they would have had the other repaired.
4.	Sọ́kí obọngísákí ndáko óyo, mbẹlẹ babọngísákí mosúsu.	If you had had this house repaired, they would have repaired the other one.
5.	Sọ́kí obọngísákí ndáko óyo, mbẹlẹ okokákí kotẹ́kisa yangó.	If you had had this house repaired, you could have sold it at a profit.
6.	Sọ́kọ́ ozilákí sánzá mọkọ́, mbẹlẹ okokákí kotẹ́kisa yangó.	If you had waited a month, you would have been able to sell it at a profit.

7.	Sọ́kọ́ ozilákí sánzá mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okẹndẹ́kí na Kinsásá.	If you had waited a month, you could have gone to Leopoldville.
8.	Sọ́kí ozalákí na nkótó mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okẹndẹ́kí na Kinsásá.	If you had had a thousand francs, you could have gone to Leopoldville.
9.	Sọ́kí ozalákí na nkótó mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okokákí kosómba bilambá.	If you had had a thousand francs, you could have bought some clothes.
10.	Sọ́kọ́ okẹndẹ́kí na Kinsásá mbẹlẹ okokákí kosómba bilambá.	If you had gone to Leopoldville, you could have bought some clothes.

PATTERN DRILL 2

1.	Moto mọ́kọ́ ayákí kolúka yọ́ na midí.	Someone came looking for you at lunchtime.
2.	Moto mọ́kọ́ asolólákí na yé lóbí na tẹlẹfọ́n.	Someone talked to him on the phone yesterday.
3.	Moto mọ́kọ́ aákobima na ngonga ya motóbá.	Someone is going out at six o'clock.
4.	Moto mọ́kọ́ atíndélákí yọ́ bondókí.	Someone sent you a rifle.
5.	Moto mọ́kọ́ abósání búuku na yé ya Lingála.	Someone has forgotten his Lingala book.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Luká numeró na bangó ya tẹlẹfọ́n.	Look up their phone number.
2.	Lukélá ngáí numeró na bangó ya tẹlẹfọ́n.	Look up their phone number for me.

3. Lukélísá yé numeró ya bangó ya tẹlẹfọ́n.	Have her look up their phone number.
4. Lukélísá yé numeró ya bangó ya tẹlẹfọ́n mpó na ngáí.	Have her look up their phone number for me.
5. Lukélísá yé búuku ya tẹlẹfọ́n mpó na ngáí.	Have her look for the phonebook for me.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Ndéngé na yé ya kolía ezalí malámu.	He has good table manners.
2. Ndéngé na yé ya koláta bilambá ezalí malámu.	He always looks nicely dressed.
3. Ndéngé na yé ya koloba ezalí malámu.	His manner of speaking is polite and easy to understand.
4. Ndéngé na yé ya kosála ezalí malámu.	He always does a good job.
5. Ndéngé na yé ya kotámbola ezalí malámu.	He walks well.

PATTERN DRILL 4

1. Nakanísí akoyáa.	I think he's coming.
2. Nakanísí akoyáa tẹ́.	I think he's not coming.
3. Nakanísí tẹ́ akoyáa.	I don't think he's coming.
4. Nakanísí te akoyáa.	I think that he's coming.
5. Nakanísí tẹ́ te akoyáa.	I don't think that he's coming.

10.1 Hypothetical Supposition.

Sọ́kọ́ oyákí lẹlọ́, mbẹlẹ napésákí yọ́ nkámá mọ́kọ́.

Hypothetical supposition or contrary-to-fact condition is expressed by the recent past in both clauses and by the particle /mbẹlẹ/ at the beginning of the main clause, e.g., /Sọ́kọ́ oyákí lẹlọ́, mbẹlẹ napésákí yọ́ nkámá mọ́kọ́/, 'If you had come today, I would have given you a thousand francs.'

In the various Lingala dialects, a number of other particles are used in the same way as described above for /mbẹlẹ/, e.g., /tikí/, /tiké/, /ka/, /kana/, /énte/, /nde/, /mbẹ/.

10.2 'Passive' Plural

Bakotíka Leó lẹlọ́ na mpókwa.

The third person plural besides expressing what is commonly done (Note 5.9) also is used like impersonal or editoral we in English, e.g., /Bakotíka Leó lẹlọ́ na mpókwa/, literally and often, 'They will leave Leopoldville this evening', but it is also often used much like English, 'We, i.e., that group of passengers, or my plane, etc., will leave Leopoldville this evening.'

10.3 Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses.

Nakanísí akoyáa.

Verbs in non-initial and subordinate clauses, which refer to a future time, are in the future tense, e.g., /Nakanísí akóyáa/, 'I think he's coming', literally, 'I think he will come'. Speakers of English often make the error of using a present tense in such clauses in Lingala.

Unit 11

Basic Sentences

-A-

-bę́lę	to hurt, suffer, be sick
1. Óokobę́lę wápi?	Where do you hurt?

-B-

-lála	to sleep, lie down; stay, remain
mónganga, mí-	physician, European doctor
2. Na butú nalálí tę́, mónganga.	I didn't sleep all night, doctor.
mutú, motú, motó, mi-	head; bunch
libumu, ma-	stomach, belly, womb
mobimba, mi-	entire, whole
3. Mutú, libumu, nzótu mobimba mpási.	My head, stomach, and whole body hurts.

-A-

mǫ́tǫ	fire, hot
4. Oókoyóka nzótu mǫ́tǫ?	Do you have a fever?

-B-

wápi	by no means, no, nothing
5. Náyéba wápi, mónganga.	How could I know, doctor?
6. Nazalí na thermomètre tę́ na ndáko.	I don't have a thermometer at home.

	-A-	
	simísi (chemise)	shirt
7.	Longólá naíno simísi na yọ́.	Take off your shirt first.
8.	Tíyá thermomètre óyo na mọnọkọ.	Put this thermometer in your mouth.
	-B-	
9.	Melesí, mónganga.	O.K., doctor.
	-A-	
	fiẹ́fẹ́lẹ́, fiẹ́vẹ́lẹ́, (fièvre)	fever
10.	Óo, ozalí na fiẹ́fẹ́lẹ́, Paul.	Oh, you have a fever, Paul.
	-B-	
	-sálisa	to help, take care of, employ, instruct
	kó	indeed, come on! go ahead!
11.	Sálísá ngáí kó mónganga.	Help me, doctor.
	-A-	
12.	Elọ́kọ́ níni olíákí toó omẹlákí lóbí?	What did you eat or drink yesterday?
	-B-	
	káka	only, alone
	tíi	tea
	límpa, ma-	bread, piece of bread
13.	Káka tíi na mámpa.	Only some tea and bread.

14. Fięfęlę yangó ezalí makási?	Is my fever very high? (The fever, (it is very high?)

-A-

mpenzá	really, truly, only, completely, alone
15. Tę́, mpenzá tę́.	No, not really.
kininí (quinine)	quinine
16. Kamátá kininí óyo, męlá míbalé sika óyo, míbalé mosúsu liboso ya kolála.	Take two of these quinine pills right away and two before going to bed.

-B-

17. Melesí, mónganga.	Thanks, doctor.

-A-

-bíka	to recover, live, be recued
18. Sǫ́kí lóbí obíkí tę́, zóngá áwa.	If you have not recovered by tomorrow, come back.

USEFUL PHRASES

Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ níni?	What day is it?
Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ ya lomíngo.	Today is Sunday.
Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ ya eyenga.	Today is Sunday.
Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ ya mosálá mǫ́kǫ́.	Today is Monday.
Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ ya mosálá míbalé.	Today is Tuesday.
Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ ya mosálá mísátu.	Today is Wednesday.
Lęlǫ́ mǫkǫlǫ la mosálá mínei.	Today is Thursday.

Lẹlọ́ mọkọlọ ya mosálá mítánu.	Today is Friday.
Lẹlọ́ mọkọlọ ya mpọ́sọ́.	Today is Saturday.
Mpọ́sọ eleki nazalákí na Brazzaville.	I spent last weekend at Brazzaville.
Na nsúka ya mpọ́sọ óyo nakokẹndẹ mobémbo na Mpótó.	This weekend I am going on a trip to Europe.
Naákolẹngẹlẹ mobémbo na ntángo ya elanga.	I'm getting ready for a trip during the dry season.
Abẹ́lí.	He's sick. He's gotten sick.
Azalí na maláli.	He's sick.
Nazokí na mọkọngọ.	I've injured my back.
Nazokí na línu.	I've injured a tooth.
Nazokí na mosai.	I've injured my finger.
Azalí kosọnọ bilambá.	She's making clothes.
Azalí kosọnọ mopíla.	She's making an undershirt.
Azalí kosọnọ pataló.	She's making some trousers.
Azalí kosọnọ kalesó.	She's making some shorts.
Azalí komeka kazáka.	He's trying on a coat.
Azalí komeka ekọti.	He's trying on a hat.
Azalí komeka soséti.	He's trying on some socks.
Azalí komeka sapáto.	He's trying on shoes.
lomíngo	Sunday
eyenga	festival, feast day; Sunday, weekend
nsúka, n-	end, termination
-bémba	to travel
mobémbo	trip, journey

Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)	Europe
-lẹngẹlẹ	to prepare, get ready
elanga	field, garden; dry season, year
malálí, maládi (maladie)	illness, sickness
-zoka	to be injured, be touched
mosai, mi-	finger, toe
-sọnọ	to sew, make clothes
mompíla, mi-	undershirt, teeshirt, vest, sweater
pataló (pantalon)	shorts, underwear
-meka	to measure, weigh, try (out), test
kazáka	coat, jacket, vest
ekọti, bi-	(man's) hat
sosétí (chaussètte)	sock, stocking
sapáto, sapáta	shoe(s)

NOTES

11.1 Emphatic /wápi/

Náyéba wápi?

/wápí/, 'where', plus the subjunctive expresses emphatic denial of the ability and/or opportunity to do something, e.g., /náyéba wápi?/, 'How could I know (if)...?', 'I don't knew whether or not...', 'I don't know anything at all about...'.

11.2 Spelling of /óo/

/óo/ is //oh//.

Lexical Drill 1

1.	Naákoyóka mutú mpási.	I have a headache.
2.	Naákoyóka libumu mpási.	I have a stomach ache.
3.	Naákoyóka mọkọngọ mpási	I have a backache.
4.	Naákoyóka lọbọkọ mpási.	I have a pain in my hand.
5.	Naákoyóka línu mpási.	I have a toothache.

Lexical Drill 2

1.	Naákobẹlẹ na mutú.	I have a headache.
2.	Naákobẹlẹ na libumu.	I have a stomach ache.
3.	Naákobẹlẹ na mọkọngọ.	I have a backache.
4.	Naákobẹlẹ na lọbọkọ.	I have a pain in my hand.
5.	Naákobẹlẹ na línu.	I have a toothache.

Lexical Drill 3

1.	Nasálaka na butú.	I work at night.
2.	Nasálaka na mói.	I work during the day.
3.	Nasálaka na ntọ́ngọ́.	I work in the morning.
4.	Nasálaka na mpókwa.	I work in the afternoon.
5.	Nasálaka na ntángu ya mbúla.	I work during the rainy season.
6.	Nasálaka na ntángu ya elanga.	I work during the dry season.

Lexical Drill 4

1. Longólá simísi.	Take off your shirt.
2. Longólá sapáto.	Take off your shoes.
3. Longólá pataló.	Take off your trousers.
4. Longólá kazáka.	Take off your coat.
5. Longólá kazáka ya mbúla.	Take off your raincoat.

Lexical Drill 5

1. Zongísá soséti.	Put on your socks.
2. Zongísá kalesó.	Put on your shorts.
3. Zongísá ekọti.	Put on your hat.
4. Zongísá pull-over.	Put on your sweater.
5. Zongísá cravate.	Put on your tie.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Pésá ngáí nsósó mobimba.	Give me a whole chicken.
2. Ókolámba lẹlọ́ na midí nsósó mobimba.	Today for lunch fix a whole chicken.
3. Ókolámba nsósó mobimba lẹlọ́ na midí.	Fix a whole chicken for lunch today.
4. Ókolámba tíi mpó na mónganga.	Fix some tea for the doctor.
5. Kẹndẹ́ kosómba tíí mpó na mónganga.	Go buy some tea for the doctor.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ayákí ntángo nazalákí kolála.	He arrived while I was asleep.
2. Ayákí ntángo nazalákí kolía.	He came while I was eating.

3.	Alongóláki bilambá na yé ntángo nazaláki kolía.	He undressed while I was eating.
4.	Alongóláki bilambá na yé ntángo azaláki libosó ya mónganga.	He undressed when he was in with the doctor.
5.	Azaláki na mpási ntángo azaláki libosó ya mónganga.	He was suffering when he was in with the doctor.
6.	Azaláki na mpási ntángo akẹndẹ́kí epáí ya mónganga.	He was sick when he went to the doctor's.
7.	Azaláki na fiẹ́fẹ́lẹ́ ntángo akẹndẹ́kí epáí ya mónganga.	He had a fever when he went to the doctor's.
8.	Azaláki na fiẹ́fẹ́lẹ́ ntángo namọ́nákí yé.	He had a fever when I saw him.
9.	Namọ́nákí yé ntángo azaláki kosálisa tatá na yé.	I saw him while he was taking care of his father.
10.	Natíndéláki yé mámpa ntángo azaláki kosálisa tatá na yé.	I sent him some bread during the time he was caring for his father.

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Sọ́kọ́ simísi na ngáí eyákí mbíndu tẹ́, kana tokei Kisangani bisú míbalé.	If my shirt hadn't got dirty, then the two of us would go to Stanleyville.
2.	Sọ́kọ́ simísi na ngáí eyákí mbíndu tẹ́, kaná nakeí kotála mónganga.	If my shirt hadn't got dirty, I would go see the doctor.
3.	Sọ́kọ́ nazaláki na malálí kana nakeí kotála mónganga.	If I were sick, I would go see the doctor.
4.	Sọ́kọ́ nazaláki na malálí kana nakẹndọ́kí kotála mónganga.	If I had been sick, I would have gone to see the doctor.

3

5.	Sọ́kọ́ nabíkákí tẹ́, kana nakẹndẹ́kí kotála mónganga.	If I hadn't got better, I would have gone to the doctor.
6.	Sọ́kọ́ nabíkákí tẹ́, mbẹ nakeí kotála mónganga.	If I hadn't got better, I would go to see the doctor.
7.	Sọ́kọ́ nazalákí na fiẹ́vẹlẹ́, mbẹ nakeí kotála mónganga.	If I had a fever, I would go see the doctor.
8.	Sọ́kọ́ nazalákí na fiẹ́vẹlẹ́, mbẹ nalálí.	If I had a fever, I'd go to bed.
9.	Sọ́kọ́ nabẹ́lẹkí, mbẹ nalálí.	If I were sick, I'd go to bed.
10.	Sọ́kọ́ nabẹ́lẹkí, mbẹ namẹlí tii ya mọ́to.	If I were sick, I'd drink some hot tea.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Tíndá motu mọ́kọ́ ábéngela ngáí mónganga.	Send someone to get me a doctor.
2.	Lobélá yé ákẹndẹ kotála mónganga.	Tell him to go see the doctor.
3.	Lobélá yé ábéngela ngáí bangó na tẹlẹfọ́n.	Tell her to get them on the phone for me.
4.	Natúnákí yé ábéngela ngáí bangó na tẹlẹfọ́n.	I asked her to get them on the phone for me.
5.	Natúnákí yé álongola simísi na yé.	I asked him to take off his shirt.
6.	Balingí álongola simísi na yé.	They wanted him to take off his shirt.
7.	Balingí koyéba elọ́kọ níni naléí toó namẹlí lẹlọ́.	They wanted to know what I had eaten and drunk today.
8.	Mónganga alingí koyéba elọ́kọ níni naléí toó namélí lẹlọ́.	The doctor wanted to know what I had eaten or drunk today.

9.	Mónganga alingí átíya thermomètre óyo na mọnọkọ́.	The doctor wanted me to put the thermometer in my mouth.
10.	Ntína níni bolingí átíya thermomètre óyo na mọnọkọ?	Why do you want me to put the thermometer in my mouth?

Unit 12

Basic Sentences

-A-

	-konza	to rule, manage
	mokonzi, ba-	chief, king, boss, supervisor
	wa	of, belonging to, at, from
1.	Alobé, óyo azalí mokonzi wa bísú.	Albert, this is our chief.

-B-

2.	Mbǫ́tę́, Mokonzi.	Good morning, Chief.

-C-

3.	Mbǫ́tę́.	Good morning.

-B-

	-fwánda, -fánda	to sit, be seated; live, reside
4.	Fwándá sǫ́kǫ́ olingí.	Sit down, please.

-C-

5.	Melesí.	Thanks.

-B-

nsango, n-	news, report
mbóka, m-	village; region, district; tribe, race; residence, address

kọ́lọ́ngọ́nu	health
6. Mokonzi, nsango bóní na mbóka?	Chief, what's new at home?
7. Bangó bánsọ bazalí nzótu kọ́lọ́ngọ́nu?	Is everybody well?

-C-

mpọngí, m-	sleep
mongungi, monkungi, n-	mosquito
mayẹ́lẹ	understanding, intelligence, intellect, mind, slyness, craftiness, manner, means
ndé	only, however, although
8. Nsango tẹ́, káka ndé na butú tozwí mpọngí tẹ́.	Nothing new, however, we haven't gotten any sleep lately.
9. Ngungi áwa mayẹ́lẹ tẹ́.	There are more mowquitoes than you can imagine.

-B-

-keba	to pay attention, be attentive
-swáa	to bite, sting
10. Kebá na bangungi baswáa bána tẹ́, mpó bakokí kozwá fiẹ́fẹ́lẹ́ makási.	Be careful that the mosquitoes don't bite the children because they would get a bad fever.
11. Ẹ́ẹ, nayébí. Ntína na yangó nayéí.	Yes, I know. That's why I've come.

-B-

	nkisi, n-	medicine, charm
12.	Olingí nápésa yǫ́ pómpi na nkísi ya ngungi?	Do you want me to give you any sprays with DDT?
	talasé (terrasse)	ditch, canal
	mpembéní	side, edge; around, near
13.	Ozalí na mái tę́ na talasé na mpembéní ya ndáko?	Don't you have water in the ditches around the house?

-C-

	pitǫlǫ́ (pétrole)	kerosene
	-sopa	to pour (out), spill; talk nonsense
14.	Ę́ę, mái ezalí, kási tozalí na pitǫlǫ́ mpó na kosopa likoló.	Yes there is, but we have enough kerosene to pour on (the ditches).

-B-

	'voiture'	automobile
	kúná	over there, yonder
15.	Voiture na yǫ́ ezalí kúná?	Is your car out there?
16.	Nakokí kotíisa pómpi na voiture?	Can I put the sprays in your car?

-C-

17.	Ę́ę, melesí.	Yes, thanks.

-B-

	masanga	wine, beer
18.	Mokonzi, omęlaka masanga níni?	Sir, what do you usually drink?

-C-

mbíla, m-	palm nuts, palm tree
19. Namẹlaka masanga ya mbíla.	I usually drink palm wine.

-B-

20. Andéle! Kẹnda kozwá masanga.	André! Go get some drinks.

USEFUL PHRASES

Nazalí na nzala.	I'm hungry.
Nazalí na mpósá ya mái.	I'm thirsty.
Nalẹmbí.	I'm tired.
Nalẹmbí na kọkẹ́ngẹlẹ bána.	I'm tired of looking after children.
Naákoyóka mpọngi.	I'm sleepy.
Naákoyóka molungé.	I'm hot.
Naákoyóka malíli.	I'm cold.
Abekí mọsọlọ na yọ́.	He borrowed the money from you.
Adéfí mbọ́ngọ na yọ́.	He borrowed the money from you.
Abekísí yọ́ mbọ́ngọ.	He loaned the money to you.
Adéfísí yọ́ mọsọlọ.	He loaned the money to you.
Ayíbí mbọ́ngọ na yọ́.	He stole the money from you.
Kangá moyíbi!	Stop the thief!
Landá moyíbi!	Follow the thief!
Ozalí na falánga ya mbuma ya nkóto mọkọ?	Do you have change for a thousand francs?
Kẹndẹ kosangisa masanga.	Go mix some drinks.

ňzala	hunger, famine
mpósá	urge, desire
-le̩mbe̩	to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done
-ké̩nge̩	to take glances at, watch
-ké̩nge̩le̩	to watch, guard
malíli	cold; shade, cool place
-beka, -défa	to borrow, buy on credit
-bekisa, -défisa	to lend, sell on credit, pay in advance
mo̩so̩lo̩, mi-	money; wealth, dowry
mbó̩ngo̩, m-	money
-yíba	to steal, take away
moyíbi, ba-	thief
-landa	to follow, pursue; presecute; sue; woo, court
mbuma, m-	fruit; sore, boil; grain, seed; change
-sanga	to assemble, come together

NOTES

12.1 Nouns From Derived Stems.

Nouns as well as verbs are formed from both simple and derived stems. This is extremely productive, i.e., very many words are formed in this manner. In the following lessons, the structure of the varios classes is described; but beginning with this lesson, many such new words are introduced in the exercises without build-up or explanation. Since the structure of such words and the roots and affixes have been previously explained, it is up to the student to recognize and analyze these new words with only the help of the English translation. The student must be able to do this if he is to control Lingala.

12.2 Agent Nouns

The MO-BA prefix class and the /-i/ suffix mark agent nouns, e.g., /mokonzi/, 'ruler', 'manager', 'chief' from /-konza/ 'to rule', 'manage'.

12.3 /wa/: /ya/

Óyo azalí mokonzi wa bísú.

Various alternates of the particle /ya/ occur, e.g., /wa/, /ma/, /mwa/.

12.4 Literary use of /ndé/ to Mark Future

In literary Lingala /ndé/, 'only', 'although', is sometimes used as a future marker, e.g., /ndé nakẹí/, 'I will go'. Since this use of /ndé/ is restricted to certain special styles of written material, the student should continue to AVOID it ENTIRELY even if he becomes fluent in Lingala.

12.5 Hyperbole with /...mayẹ́lẹ tẹ́/.

Ngungi áwa mayẹ́lẹ tẹ́.

To express overabundance of something /...mayẹ́lẹ tẹ́/ is used, e.g., /Ngungi áwa mayẹ́lẹ tẹ́/, 'There are more mosquitoes than you could imagine/count, than there is sand in the sea.'

12.6 Nouns of Deed or Action, Type 2.

The BO-MA prefix class and the suffix /-i/ form a large number of nouns of deed or action, e.g., /boléi/, 'meal', /boyéi/,

'arrival', 'coming'. Since the plural of nearly all these words is quite rare, it is given in the vocabulary in parentheses, e.g., /bobandi, (ma-)/, 'beginning', 'introduction'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Nalingí ópésa ngáí falánga ya mbuma ya nkóto mọ́kọ́.	I need change for a thousand francs.
2.	Nalingí ópésa ngáí mbọ́ngọ nadéfísákí yọ́.	I need the money I loaned you.
3.	Nazalí na besoin ya mbọ́ngọ nadefísákí yọ́.	I need the money I loaned you.
4.	Nazalí na besoin ya pitọlọ́ mpó na mái.	I need some kerosene for water.
5.	Ayéí kotúna pitọlọ́ mpó na mái.	He has come to ask for kerosene for spreading on water.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Nkísi ya ngungi ya bínú ekokí.	You have enough DDT.
2.	Essence ya bísú ekokí.	We have enough gasoline.
3.	Mọsọlọ ya bangó ekokí.	They have enough money.
4.	Bilambá ya yé bikokí.	She has enough clothes.
5.	Masanga ya yọ́ makokí.	You have enough beer.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1.	Mokonzi alobélí ngáí te náke̩nde̩ kosómba nsósó.	The chief told me to go buy a chicken.
	Bakonzi balobélí bísú te tóke̩nde̩ kosómba nsósó.	The chiefs told us to go buy some chickens.
2.	Mosáli afwándí epáí ya ndáko.	The worker is sitting by the house.
	Basáli bafwándí epáí ya ndáko.	The workers are sitting by the house(s).
3.	Mosáleli akolámbela yó̩ nyama.	The servant will prepare the meat for you.
	Basáleli bakolámbela bínú nyama.	The servants will prepare the meat for you.
4.	Mwána óyo ya mobáli ayébí nkómbó ya mosómbi té̩.	This boy doesn't know the name of the purchaser.
	Bána óyo ya mibáli bayébí nkómbó ya basómbi té̩.	These boys don't know the names of the purchasers.
5.	Moté̩ki aákofwándaka nsima ya biló̩kó̩ na yé.	The trader is sitting behind his things.
	Baté̩ki baákofwándaka nsima ya biló̩kó̩ na bangó.	The traders are sitting behind their things.
6.	Motáli alingí kotíkala té̩ mpó na mbúla.	The spectator didn't want to stay because of the rain.
	Batáli balingí kotíkala té̩ mpó na mbúla.	The spectators didn't want to stay because of the rain.

7.	Moyékoli azalákí na búuku moke̩.	The student had a small book.
	Bayékoli bazalákí na búuku mike̩.	The students had small books.
8.	Molobeli atúní motu óyo motúna.	The speaker asked the man a question.
	Balobeli batúní batu óyo mitúna.	The speakers asked the men questions.
9.	Mosálisi apésákí mwásí nkísi.	The assistant gave the woman the medicine.
	Basálisi bapésákí básí nkísi.	The assistants gave the women the medicine.
10.	Tatá na ngáí azalí na mosála te̩.	My father doesn't have a job.
	Batatá na bísú bazalí na misálá te̩.	Our fathers don't have jobs.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Natíndélí mokonzi mafúta na mwána.	I sent the chief some oil by the boy.
2.	Natíndélí basáli nyama.	I sent the workers some meat.
3.	Natíndí basáli nyama.	I sent the workers for some meat.
4.	Natíndí voiture ékẹnde̩ kokamata mokonzi.	I sent the car for the chief.
5.	Atúní ngáí voiture mpó ákẹnde̩ kokamata mokonzi.	He asked me for a car to go get the chief.
6.	Atúní ngáí voiture mpó ákẹnde̩ na Kinsásá.	He asked me for a car to go to Leopoldville.

7.	Atúní ngáí nátínda pómpi na Kinsásá.	He asked me to send the spray guns to Leopoldville.
8.	Atúní ngáí nátínda pómpi na ndáko na yé na Kinsásá.	He asked me to send the sprays to his house in Leopoldville.
9.	Natíkálí na ndáko na yé na Kinsásá.	I'm staying at his house in Leopoldville.
10.	Natíkálí na mosálá.	I'm staying at work. I have stayed at work.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1.	Mọsọni asómbí masíni ya kosọnọ bilambá.	The tailor bought a sewing machine.
	Basọni basómbi masíni ya kosọnọ bilambá.	The tailors bought sewing machines.
2.	Motámbwisi ya mótuka akokitisa mobótisi na lopitálo.	The chauffeur will take the midwife to the hospital.
	Batámbwisi ya mítuka bakokitisa babótisi na lopitálo.	The chauffeurs will take the midwives to the hospital.
3.	Molámbi ayébí ntángu ya bokómi ya mokonzi tẹ́.	The cook doesn't know the time of the arrival of the chief.
	Balámbi bayébí ntángu ya bokómi ya bakonzi tẹ́.	The cooks don't know the hour of arrival of the chiefs.
4.	Momẹmi aákotíela ngáí sandúku na mótuka.	The porter is putting the trunk in the car for me.
	Bamẹmi baákotíela bísú basandúku na mítuka.	The porters are putting the trunks in the cars for us.

5.	Moyémbi ayébísí mokonzi botíki ya koyémba.	The singer submitted his resignation to the choral director.
	Bayémbi bayébísí bakonzi botíki ya koyémba.	The singers submitted their resigantion(s) to the choral director.
6.	Mobóti na ngáí atúní ntángo ya bokẹi ya nọ́kọ́.	My parent asked the departure time of my uncle.
	Babóti na bísú batúní ntángo ya bokẹi ya banọ́kọ́.	Our parents asked the departure time of our uncles.
7.	Moyékoli aákoyékola ndéngé ya bobótisi.	The student is studying obstetrics.
	Bayékoli baákoyékola ndéngé ya bobótisi.	The students are studying obstetrics.
8.	Bomeki ya mótuka na ngáí ya síká ezalákí lóbí.	I tried out my new car yesterday.
	Bomeki ya mítuka na bísú ya sika ezalákí lóbí.	We tried out our new cars yesterday.
9.	Na nsima ya boléi, molobeli azalákí kolobela batu mpó na bobandi ya kelási.	After the meal, the speaker talked to the people about the beginning of school.
	Na nsima ya boléi, balobeli bazalákí kolobela batu mpó na bobandi ya kelási.	After the meal, the speakers talked to the people about the beginning of school.
10.	Mobọngisi ya mótuka akangí mótuka mpó na motu ya makolo.	The mechanic stopped the car because of a pedestrian.
	Babọngisi ya mítuka bakangí mítuka mpó na batu ya makolo.	The mechanics stopped the cars because of the pedestrians.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Libosó na boléi, namẹlí likáyá mọ́kọ́.	Before the meal, I smoked a cigarette.
2.	Libosó na boléi, nasukólí nzótu.	Before the meal, I took a bath.
3.	Libosó ya bokéi, nasukólí nzótu.	Before leaving, I took a bath.
4.	Libosó ya bokẹ́i, atíí mopẹpẹ na mótuka.	Before leaving, he aired up the tires.
5.	Nsima ya bokangi mótuka, atíi mopẹpẹ.	After stopping the car, he aired up the tire(s).
6.	Nsima ya bokangi mótuka, abimí.	After stopping the car, he got out.
7.	Nsima ya kotála bipáí na bipáí, abimí.	After looking all around, he got out.
8.	Nsima ya kotála bipáí na bipáí, azóngí na mótuka.	After looking all around, he got back in the car.
9.	Nsima ya kosolola, azóngí na mótuka.	After talking a while, he got back in the car.
10.	Nsima ya kosolola, akọ́tí na ndáko lisúsu.	After talking a while, he went back in the house again.

Question and Answer Drill 1

1.	Ndínga na yọ́ ya mbóka níni?	What is your native language?
	Ndínga na ngáí ya mbóka ezalí Lingála.	My native language is Lingala.
2.	Oyéí kosála níni?	What did you come for?
	Nayéí kotúna yọ́ bolímbisi.	I've come to ask your forgiveness.

3.	Ndéngé na yé ya bozali ezalí bóní?	What kind of personality does he have?
	Ndéngé na yé ya bozali ezalí malámu.	He has a nice personality.
4.	Bolongoli mokonzi na mosálá na yé ezalí makási?	Is the removal of a chief difficult?
	Éę, bolongoli mokonzi na mosálá na yé ezalí makási.	Yes, the removal of a chief is difficult.
5.	Botáli libosó ya lininísa ezalí kitǫ́kǫ?	Is the view from the window beautiful?
	Tę́, botáli libosó ya lininísa ezalí kitǫ́kǫ tę.	No, the view from the window isn't beautiful.
6.	Bakę́ngęli bazalí wápi?	Where are the guards?
	Bakę́ngęli batęlęmí libosó ya ndáko monę́nę.	The guards are standing in front of the big building.
7.	Náni azalí kosangisa masanga?	Who is mixing the drinks?
	Mwána ya mosálá azalí kosangisa masanga.	The house boy is fixing the drinks.
8.	Olingí nápésa yǫ́ níni?	What do you need?
	Nalingí ópésa ngáí nkísi ya ngungi.	I need some DDT.
9.	Ozwí nsango ya mbóka?	Have you had any news from home lately?
	Eę, lęlǫ́ nazwí nsango ya mbóka.	Yes, today I received news from home.
10.	Óyo kúná ndáko na yǫ́?	Is that your house over there?
	Éę, yangó ndáko na ngáí.	Yes, that's my house.

Unit 13

Basic Sentences

	-A-	
1.	Óokosála níni?	What are you doing?
	-B-	
	-koma	to write, copy, enroll, engrave, sign
	moníngá, ba-	friend, companion, peer, colleague
	mokandá, mi-	letter, paper, document, sheet of paper
2.	Naákokomela moníngá na ngáí mokandá.	I'm writing my friend a letter.
	mosíká, (mi-)	distance, distant, removed, far off
	-yókana	to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree
3.	Mikǫlǫ mikómí mosíká toókoyókana lisúsu nsango tę́.	It's been a long time since we've heard from one another.
	-A-	
4.	Óyo níni?	What's this?
	-B-	
	chec	check
	magazíni (magasin)	department store
5.	Óo, nabósání kotínda chec na magazíni.	Oh, I forgot, to send a check to the department store.

nyongo, n-	debt
6. Batúní ngáí sọ́kọ́ nakozila níni mpó nakofúta nyongo na bangó.	They asked me why I'm waiting before I pay them.

-A-

7. Osómbákí níni?	What did you buy?

-B-

esáleli, bi-	tool, instrument
taliyé, talyé (atelier)	shop, workshop, workroom
8. Mwáa bisáleli mọ́kọ́ mpó na taliyé na ngáí.	Just some tools for my workshop.

-A-

esálelo, bi-	shop, workshop, workroom, place to/for work
9. Osálaka níni na esálelo na yọ́?	What do you make in your shop?

-B-

ekeko, bi-	picture, sculpture, statue
mpẹ́mbẹ́, m-	white; chalk; ivory
nzoku, n-	elephant
libáyá, ma-	wood, board
10. Bikeko ya mpẹ́mbẹ́ ya nzoku ná ya mabáyá.	Sculpture in ivory and wood.

-A-

11. Nakokí kotála yango na ntángu ya mosálá?	Can I visit your shop during working hours?

	-B-	
	liloba, ma-	word; order (for merchandise)
12.	Mpó na nini tẹ́?	Why not?
13.	Tozalí na bilọ́kọ míngi tẹ́ ya kotẹ́ka, kási okokí kopésa maloba mpó tósála elọ́kọ olingí.	We don't have many things to sell, but you can order what you want us to make.
	-A-	
14.	Ntángu bóní okokí kozila mpó ózwá yangó?	How long do you have to wait for them?
	-B-	
15.	Káka mikọlọ míbalé tóó mísátu.	Only two or three days.
	-B-	
16.	Bofungolaka ntángu nini?	What hours are you open?
	-A-	
17.	Na huit heures tíí na midí, mpé na trois heures tíí na sept heures ya mpókwa.	From eight until noon, and from three until seven in the afternoon.
	-B-	
18.	Malámu. Lóbí.	Fine. See you tomorrow.
	-A-	
19.	Lóbí.	See you tomorrow.

USEFUL PHRASES

Kiliyọ́ ebúkání.	The pencil is broken.
Ekomeli ya mái ya mokandá ebúkání.	The pen is broken.
Lifungóla ebúkání.	The key is broken.
Pọ́sita efungwamaka ntángu níni?	What hours is the post office open?
Tẹ́mbẹlẹ na káti ya Kinsásá ntálo bóní?	How much does it cost to send a letter within Leopoldville?
Tẹ́mbẹlẹ na Kinsásá tíí na Kisangani ntálo bóní?	How much does it cost to send a letter from Leopoldville to Stanleyville?
Palatọ́ atíkí mikandá.	The postman left some mail.
Palatọ́ ayéí na mikandá.	The postman brought the mail.
Esíká ya kobwáka mikandá ezalí na nsúka ya balabálá.	There's a mail box/post office on the corner of the street.
Nazwí masíni ya koseba kiliọ́ na esíká ya kotẹ́ka búuku.	I got a pencil sharpener at the bookstore.
Nasẹ́ngí bifándeli mpó na kelási.	I ordered some seats/desks for the school.
Libóké etíndámí na aviọ́.	The package was sent by airmail.
kiliyọ́, kiliọ́ (crayon)	pencil; legal charges, costs
ekomeli, bi-	writing instrument, writing material
lifungóla, ma-	key
pọ́sita (poste)	post office, postal service, mail box

tẹ́mbẹlẹ (timbre)	postage-stamp
káti	in, inside (of), in the middle of, among, center, middle, inside
ntálo, ntálu, n-	price, number
palatọ́	errand boy, messenger, postman
-bwáka	to throw; reject, renounce, throw-out, disown
balabálá	street, (broad) road
-seba	to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine
-sẹ́ngẹ, -sẹ́nga	to ask for, beg, order (merchandise)
efándeli, bi-	seat, chair
libóké, ma-	bunch, group, pack, package, swarm
avió (avion)	airplane, airmail

NOTES

13.1 Passive

Libóké etíndámí na aviọ́.

The passive extension /-am/ refers to something *done by someone/something other than* the subject of the verb, e.g., /Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ekangwámí na mwána/. 'The door is/has been opened by the child.' The passive also occurs without an expressed agent, i.e., without /na/ and the doer of the action, e.g., /Libóké etíndámí na aviọ́/, 'The package was sent by airplane.' /na aviọ́/ is not the agent, but the *means* used by the unexpressed agent.

/-am-/ after primary vowels in some verbs is /-em-/, e.g., /Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ekangémí/, 'The door has been closed'. /-am-/ after secondary vowels is /-ẹm-/ or /-ọm-/ as determined by vowel harmony.

13.2 Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal

Mikọlọ mikómí mosiká toókoyókana lisúsu nsango tẹ́.

Nabósání kotínda chec na magazíni.

The ingressive stative extension /-an-/ refers to something that gets done, reaches or attains a certain state, becomes in a certain condition often with the help of the subject of the verb. The ingressive stative can be very confusing to speakers of English and French because it translates into a number of their grammatical categories: as (1) a passive, (2) a stative, (3) a reciprocal, or (4) a reflexive. But regardless of the translation, the student must remember that the basic idea is that of becoming or arriving at the state given in the verb stem, e.g., /Namọ́nání na yẹ́./, 'I was seen by him', or 'I got seen by him'; 'I was seen with him', or 'I got seen with him'. 'We saw each other', or 'we got seen by each other'. Consider also /Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ekangwání./ 'The door is open', 'The door got open', 'The door has come open'.

The plural of the ingressive stative is usually reciprocal, i.e., 'to do for one another', as in the dialogue /Mikọlọ mikómí mosiká toókoyókana lisúsu nsango tẹ́/, 'we haven't heard from each other for a long time.', or 'we haven't been heard from (let ourselves he heard from) for a long time.'

13.3 /mikọlọ mikómí mosiká/

/mikọlọ mikómí mosiká/, 'It has been a long time since that'..., is a fixed expression, i.e., no changes or substitutions can be made in this construction, e.g., /mbúla/, 'years', cannot be substituted for /mikọlọ/, 'days'.

13.4 Instrument Nouns, Type 1

esáleli

Instrument nouns of most commonplace things have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-i/ suffix and mean the instrument or tool of the base, e.g., /esáleli/, literally 'doer', 'thing to do with', i.e., 'tool', 'instrument', and /ezaleli/, 'thing to sit in', 'seat', 'chair'.

13.5 Locative Nouns, Type 1

esálelo

Locative nouns have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-o/ suffix and mean the place to do or for doing something, e.g., /esálelo/, literally 'place to work', i.e., 'shop', 'workroom'.

13.6 Avoidance of Base Repetition

Mwáa bisáleli mó̩kó̩ mpó na taliyé na ngáí.

Lingala usually avoids the repetition of the same base in a sentence. In the sentence above from the dialogue, the French loanword /taliyé/, 'workshop', is used instead of /esálelo/, 'workshop', because the base /-sál-/ is used earlier in the sentence in /bisáleli/, 'tools'.

The same applies to having a verb and its object from the same base. Any such combination as 'to walk a walk', will be avoided and words from different bases will be used or the object will be omitted. However, it is not uncommon for both the subject and the verb to have the same base.

13.7 Instrument Nouns, Type 2

Some instrument nouns are marked by the LI-MA prefix class and either an /-a/ or /-á/ suffix, e.g., /lifungóla/, 'key', and /lisálá/, 'cultivated field'.

13.8 Instrument Nouns, Type 3

Some abstract instrument nouns have the LI-MA prefixes and an /-i/ suffix, e.g., /litálisi/, 'demonstration', 'a showing'.

13.9 Expletive

Bakosála litálisi na lisálá.

The third person plural is used as an expletive, i.e., translates 'there is/are', e.g., /Bakosála litálisi na lisálá./, 'There will be a demonstration'. Compare Note 10.2.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize all verbs.

1.	Nazalí kokomela moníngá na ngáí mokandá.	I'm writing a letter to my friend.
	Tozalí kokomela baníngá na bísú mikandá.	We are writing letters to our friends.
2.	Asómbákí mwáa esáleli mọ́kọ́ mpó na taliyé na yé.	He bought a tool for his shop.
	Basómbákí mwáa bisáleli mọ́kọ́ mpó na bataliyé na bangó.	They bought some tools for their shops.
3.	Motu óyo azalí kosála ezaleli ya mabáyá.	The man is making a wooden chair.
	Batu óyo bazalí kosála bizaleli ya mabáyá.	The men are making chairs out of wood.
4.	Bakosála litálisi na lisálá ya Pierre.	There will be a demonstration in Pierre's field.
	Bakosála matálisi na masálá ya Pierre.	There will be demonstrations in Pierre's fields.

5.	Mokonzi atíndí mọnọkọ na mwána.	The chief sent a message by the boy.
	Bakonzi batíndí minọkọ na bána.	The chiefs sent messages by the boys.
6.	Okokí kopésa ngáí lisálisi?	Can you give me some help?
	Bokokí kopésa bísú lisálisi?	Can you give us some help?
7.	Tatá atíndélí ngáí mokandá na mbọngọ na káti.	My father sent me a letter with money in it.
	Batatá batíndélí bísú mikandá na mbọngọ na káti.	Our fathers sent us letters with money in them.
8.	Atúní na motu óyo epáí alálaka.	He asked the man where he lives.
	Batúní na batu óyo epáí balálaka.	They asked the men where they lived.
9.	Naákokomela moníngá na ngáí mokandá.	I'm writing a letter to my friend.
	Toókokomela baníngá na bísú mikandá.	We are writing letters to our friends.
10.	Apésí yọ esáleli.	He gave you the tool.
	Bapésí bínú bisáleli.	They gave you the tools.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Naákokomela moníngá na ngáí mokandá.	I'm writing my friend a letter.
2.	Naákokoma nkómbó ya bayékoli.	I'm writing the names of the students.
3.	Magazíni nyọnsọ bizalí na nkómbó ya bayékoli.	All the stores have the names of the students.

4.	Magazíni nyọ́nsọ bizalí na bikeko ya mikẹ́ ya mabáyá.	All the stores have small wood statues.
5.	Áwa basálaka bikeko ya mikẹ́ ya mabáyá.	Here they make little wooden statues.
6.	Áwa basálaka mikọlọ nyọ́nsọ.	Here they work every day.
7.	Áwa batẹ́kaka mpẹ́mbẹ́ ya nzoku mikọlọ nyọ́nsọ.	Here they sell ivory every day.
8.	Áwa batékaka mpẹ́mbẹ ya nzoku káka mọkọlọ ya mpọ́sọ.	Here they sell ivory only on Saturday.
9.	Nazalaka na ndáko káka mọkọlọ ya mpọ́sọ.	I'm at home only on Saturday.
10.	Nazalaka na ndáko nsima ya ngonga ya nsambo ya mpókwa.	I am home after seven P.M.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Nayékwisi bayékoli kokoma.	I taught the students how to write.
2.	Alobí na bayékoli bákoma.	She told the students to write.
3.	Alobí na bána básálisana.	She told the children to help each other.
4.	Tolingí bána básálisana.	We want the children to help each other.
5.	Tolingí kolálisa bána.	We want to put the children to sleep.
6.	Bazalí kolálisa bána.	They are putting the children to bed.
7.	Bazalí kobimisa voiture.	They are getting the car out.

8.	Azalí kobimisa voiture.	He is getting the car out.
9.	Azalí kobimisela ngáí voiture.	He is getting the car out for me.
10.	Nalobélí yé ábimisela ngáí voiture.	I asked him to get the car out for me.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Sika óyo ekómí ntángu ya mosálá.	It's time to start to work.
2.	Sika áwa ekómí ntángu ya mosálá.	It's time to start to work.
3.	Sika áwa tókẹndẹ ntángu ekokí.	It's time to go.
4.	Sika óyo tókẹndẹ ntángu ekokí.	It's time to go.
5.	Ntángu ya kokẹndẹ ekokí.	It's time to go.
6.	Ntángu ya kolía ekokí.	It's time to eat.
7.	Ntángu ya kosálisa bána ekokí.	It's time to help the children.
8.	Ntángu ya kobanda kelási ekokí.	It's time to start class. It's time to leave for school.
9.	Ntángu ya kofungola magazíni ekokí.	It's time to open the store.
10.	Ntángu ya kokanga magazíni ekokí.	It's time to close the store.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ekangémí.	The door is closed. The door has been closed.
2.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ekangwání.	The door is open. The door has come open.
3.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ekangwámí.	The door is opened. The door has been opened.
4.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ezalákí ya kokangwama ntángu nakómákí.	The door was open(ed) when I arrived.
5.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ezalí kokangwana.	The door comes open. The door won't stay shut.
6.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ezalí kokangwana.	The door opens/swings/pushes open. (though it is closed).
7.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ezalí ya kokangwama tẹ́.	The door is closed (but not locked).
8.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko ezalí ya kokangwama.	The door is opened back/standing open.
9.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko efungwámákí na moyékwisi.	The door was opened by the teacher.
10.	Mọnọkọ ya ndáko efungwamaka ntángu nyọ́nsọ na moyékwisi.	The door is always opened by the teacher.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Mikandá mikomámákí na bayékoli.	The letters were written by the students.
2.	Bikeko bisómbámákí na bayékoli.	The statues were purchased by the students.

3.	Bikeko bisómbámákí na palatǫ́.	The statues were bought by the postman.
4.	Mafungóla mazwámákí na palatǫ́.	The keys were taken by the postman.
5.	Mafungóla mazwámákí na basálí.	The keys were taken by the workmen.
6.	Tę́mbęlę bimǫ́námákí na basálí.	The stamps were found by the workmen.
7.	Tę́mbęlę bimǫ́námákí na moníngá na ngáí.	The stamps were found by my friend.
8.	Libóké etíndámí na moníngá na ngáí.	The package was sent by my friend.
9.	Libóké etíndámí na aviǫ́.	The package was sent by airmail.
10.	Libóké etíndámí na Bruxelles mpó na Kongó.	The package was sent from Brussels to the Congo.

Unit 14

Basic Sentences

-A-

	mbala, m-	time, times, often, mostly
1.	Mbala bóní basálaka election na mbóka na bínú?	How often do you have elections in your country?

-B-

2.	Election ya président toó ya bourgmestres?	Election for president or for mayors?

-A-

3.	Nyọ́nsọ míbalé.	Both.

-B-

4.	Óyo ya président ezalí na nsima ya mbúla mínei nyọ́nsọ, óyo ya babourgmestres nsima ya mbúla míbalé.	The one for president is every four years, the one for mayors every two years.

-A-

5.	Bozalí na baParlementaires bóní?	How many members of Parliament are there?

-B-

6.	Nakanísí ntúkú nsambo toó mwambe.	I believe seventy or eighty.

-A-

'voter'	to vote

7.	Banáni bakokí kovoter na election?	Who can vote in the election?
	-B-	
8.	Batu bazalí na mbúla ntúkú míbalé na mọ́kọ́ tíí na likoló.	Those who have reached the age of twenty-one and over.
	-A-	
	ekólo, bi-	tribe, race, region of origin, people of same place or language
9.	Mpó na kovoter, batálaka ekólo?	With regard to voting, is tribe considered?
	-B-	
	se	that...
10.	Tẹ́, wáná tẹ́, káka se mbúla na ndéngé ya motu okovoter.	No, not that, only the age and competence of the person you will vote for.
	-A-	
11.	Election ya nsima ezalákí ntángo níni?	When was the last election?
	-B-	
12.	Ezalákí na mbúla elekí.	It was last year.
	-A-	
13.	Election yangó ezalákí mpó ya président toó ya babourgmestres?	Was that election for president or for mayors?

-B-

14. Ezalákí mpó ya bourgmestres.	It was for mayors.
15. Mpó ya président, óyo mbúla mísátu.	The one for president was three years ago.

USEFUL PHRASES

Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kobętę ndembó.	He's teaching the children how to play soccer.
Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kozínga bolangíti.	He's showing the children how to fold the blankets.
Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kosakana.	He's showing the children how to amuse themselves.
Ekípe ya Lovaniúm elóngí na lisanu.	The team from Lovanium won the game.
Ayambí ndembó.	He caught the ball.
Atíí monyámá.	He made a goal.
Atíí ntembe na ngáí.	He discussed it with me.
Ndámbo ya batu bamatákí na masúwa.	Part of the men got on the boat.
Ndámbo ya batu babimákí na masúwa.	Part of the men got off the boat.
Ndámbo ya batu bakǫtákí na otobísi.	Part of the men got in the bus.
Ndámbo ya batu bakitákí na otobísi.	Part of the men got out of the bus.
-laka	to give advice; set a time; promise;order
-lakisa	to show, display, teach, instruct

ndembó, n-	rubber, ball
-zínga	to fold (up), roll (up); surround, encircle
bolangítı, bolangísı	blanket
-sakana, sana	to play, amuse oneself, have a good tıme
ekípe (équıpe)	team, squad, crew, gang
-lónga	to be successful, wın, be proved rıght
lısano, lısanu, ma-	game
-yamba	to accept, belıeve, receıve, entertaın, welcome, guıde, steer, catch
monyámá, mı-	net
ntembe, n-	dıscussıon, argument, doubt, suspıcıon, hesıtatıon
ndámbo, n-	part, pıece, share, half
masúwa	boat, shıp
otobísı (autobus)	bus

14.1 Mıscellaneous Nouns

ekólo ekeko

A number of dıfferent kınds of nouns, such as collectıves and human artıfacts, are marked by the E-BI prefıx class and an /-o/ or /-u/ suffıx, e.g., /ekólo/, 'trıbe', 'regıon or orıgın', /-kóla/, 'to grow (up)', /ekeko/, 'pıcture', 'statue', /-keka/, 'to see', 'look', 'examıne'.

14.2 /se/

/se/ introduces subordinate clauses and freely substitutes with /te/. Compare Note 6.5

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Mbala bóní basálaka election?	How often are elections held?
2.	Mbala bóní osílí okeí na Kongó?	How many times have you been in in the Congo?
3.	Mbala bóní osílí okeí na Kisangani?	How many times have you been to Stanleyville?
4.	Mbúla bóní osálí na Kisangani?	How long have you been in Stanleyville?
5.	Mbúla bóní osálí na Matádi?	How long have you been in Matadi?
6.	Ntángo níni ozalákí na Matádi?	How long were you at Matadi?
7.	Ntángo níni ozalákí na Leó?	How long were you at Leopoldville?
8.	Mbúla bóní okosála na Leó?	How long will you be in Leopoldville?
9.	Mbúla bóní okosála na Bóma?	How long will you be in Boma?
10.	Mikọlọ bóní okosála mpó okokóma na Bóma?	How long will it be until you arrive in Boma?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Batu nyọnsọ minei balekí mbúla ntúkú minei.	All four of the men are over forty years old.
2.	Batu nyọnsọ minei bazalákí áwa mbúla elekí.	All four of the men were here last year.

3.	Ndámbo ya batu bazaláki áwa mbúla elekí.	Some of the men were here last year.
4.	Ndámbo ya batu bakozala áwa mbúla ekoyáa.	Some of the men will be here next year.
5.	Bikólo nyọ́nsọ bikozala áwa mbúla ekoyáa.	All of the tribe will be here next year.
6.	Bikólo nyọ́nsọ bizaláki na ndáko ya mokonzi.	The whole tribe was present at the chief's house.
7.	Bourgmestre ya Leó deux azaláki na ndáko ya mokonzi.	The mayor of Leopoldville II was at the chief's house.
8.	Bourgmestre ya Leó deux aákokonza malámu.	The mayor of Leopoldville II does a good job of managing.
9.	Mokonzi ya mbóka ya bísú aákokonza malámu.	The chief of our village rules well.
10.	Mokonzi ya mbóka ya bísú alingí ndáko ya sika.	The chief of our village would like to have a new house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1.	Liyébisi etíndámí na molakisi.	The announcement was sent to (or by) the teacher.
	Mayébisi matíndámí na balakisi.	The announcements were sent to (or by) the teachers.
2.	Mọbọngisi bibendé abosánákí ebẹ́tẹli na yé.	The mechanic forgot his hammer.
	Babọngisi bibendé babosánákí bibẹ́tẹli na bangó.	The mechanics forgot their hammers.

3.	Ekangeli ya mọnọkọ ebúkání.	The door handle got broken.
	Bikangeli ya minọkọ bibúkání.	The door handles got broken.
4.	Lifúta na ngáí ekokí tẹ na libótá mobimba.	My salary isn't sufficient for my entire family.
	Mafúta na bísú mokokí tẹ na mabótá mobimba.	Our salaries aren't sufficient for our entire families.
		There isn't enough cooking oil for our entire families.
5.	Na makanisi na yé, alíngi kopésa ndingisa ya kobína.	It's his intention to give permission for the dance.
	Na makanisi na bangó, balíngi kopésa ndingisa ya kobína.	It's their intention to give permission for the dance.
6.	Mokomi ya mokandá óyo ayébání tẹ.	The writer of this document is unknown.
	Bakomi ya mikandá óyo bayébání tẹ.	The writers of these documents are unknown.
7.	Atíyání ntembe na ngáí.	He discussed it with me.
	Batíyání ntembe na bísú.	They discussed it with us.
8.	Azalí kozila mbótama ya mwána na yé ya libosó.	She is awaiting the birth of her first child.
	Bazalí kozila mbótama ya bána na bangó ya libosó.	They are waiting for the birth of their first children.
9.	Moyékoli akanísí te kelási ekangémí.	The students thought school was closed.
	Bayékoli bakanisí te bakelasi bikangémí.	The students though the schools were closed.

10.	Mosáleli aákopalola mbálá.	The servant is going to peel the potato.
	Basáleli baákopalola mbálá.	The servants are going to peel the potatoes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Náni azalí mokonzi ya mbóka ya bínú?	Who is the chief of your village?
2.	Banáni bazalí na mokonzi ya mbóka ya bínú?	Who is with the chief of your village?
3.	Banáni bakokí kovoter na election?	Who can vote in the elections?
4.	Banáni bakokí kosálisa batu ya mosálá?	Who can help the employees?
5.	Banáni bakokí kosála na letá?	Who can work for the government?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Ebọngákí názila mbúla mísátu libosó ya kokęndę na Mpútú.	I had to wait three years before going to Europe.
2.	Ebọngí názila mbúla mísátu libosó ya kokęndę na Mpútú.	I have to wait three years before going to Europe.
3.	Ebọngí názila tíí mọkọlọ ya mosálá mọkọ́ mpó na kosómba bilambá wáná.	I'll have to wait until Monday to buy those clothes.
4.	Ebọngí názila tíí mọkọlọ ya mosálá mínei mpó na kosómba bilambá wáná.	I'll have to wait until Thursday to buy those clothes.

5.	Sọ́kí oyákí tẹ́, mbẹ nazilákí tíí mọkọlọ ya mosálá mínei mpó na kosómba bilamba wáná.	If you hadn't come, I would have had wait until Thursday to buy the clothes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Bandá akẹndẹkí naínu akomélí bísú mokandá tẹ́.	Since he left, he hasn't written us a letter.
2.	Bandá mbúla elekí naínu akomélí bísú mokandá tẹ́.	He hasn't written us a letter since last year.
3.	Útá mbúla elekí naínu akomélí bísú mokandá tẹ́.	He hasn't written us a letter since last year.
4.	Útá mbúla elekí naínu nabẹ́tí lisúsu ndembó tẹ́.	I haven't played soccer again since last year.
5.	Tíí na mbúla ekoyáa nakobẹta lisúsu ndembó tẹ́.	I won't play soccer again until next year.
6.	Tíí na mbúla ekoyáa election mosúsu ekozala tẹ́.	There won't be another election until next year.
7.	Tíí nsima ya mbúla mísátu, election mosúsu ekozala tẹ́.	There won't be another election for three years.
8.	Tíí nsima ya mbúla mísátu bokolála na esíká óyo.	You will live here for three years.
9.	Tíí na ebandeli ya mbúla ekoyáa, bokolála na esíká óyo.	You will live here until the beginning of next year.
10.	Tíí na nsúka ya mbúla ekoyáa, bokolála na esíká óyo.	You will live here until the end of next year.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1.	Bána baákosakana na kátı ya ndáko mpó na mbúla.	The children will play inside because of the rain.
2.	Bána baákosakana na libánda mpó likoló ezalí malámu.	The children will play outside because the weather is nice.
3.	Bána batíndámí na molakisi básakana na libándá mpó na likoló ezalí malámu.	The children were sent out to play by the teacher because the weather is nice.
4.	Bána batíndámí na molakisi bámọ́nọ litálisi.	The children were sent to see the exposition by the teacher.
5.	Bána batíndámí bámọ́nọ bitálisi na molakisi.	The children were sent with the teacher to see the exposition.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 8

1.	Madẹ́su malámbámí na bọ́i.	These beans were prepared by the houseboy.
2.	Toókoyókama na bọ́i.	We will be (over) heard by the houseboy.
3.	Toókoyókana na bọ́i.	We are on friendly terms with the houseboy.
4.	Toókoyókana na batu míngi.	We have a lot of friends.
5.	Président ayébámí na batu míngi.	The President is known by many people.

14.3 Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object

Liyébisi etíndámí na molakisi.

The above sentence would usually be understood to mean, 'The notice was sent by the teacher', however, it could mean, 'The notice was sent to the teacher'. To specify only 'to', /mpó na/

is used, e.g., /liyébisa etíndámí mpó na molakisi/, 'The notice was sent to the teacher.'

14.4 Lovanium University

Lovanium, the national university of the Congo, is beautifully laid out on a plateau about eight miles from downtown Leopoldville.

14.5 Leopoldville II

Leopoldville is divided into 'communes' each with a 'bourgmestre'. Though the communes are part of a larger municipal organization, they do have a great deal of autonomy.

Unit 15

Basic Sentences

-A-

mokóló, ba-	grown person, adult
1. Okosála níni, sọ́kọ́ okómí mokóló?	What are you going to do when you are grown?

-B-

'ministre'	minister (cabinet post)
2. Na makanisi na ngáí, nalingaka nákóma ministre.	In my opinion, I'd like to be a cabinet minister.

-A-

sodá, ba-	soldier
3. Kási libosó okosála mosálá ya sodá?	But first, aren't you going to do military service?

-B-

4. Tẹ́ tatá, mosálá wáná nalingí yangó tẹ́.	No, Sir, I don't want that job.
-pusa	to surpass, exceed, be very, be too much
-nyọ́kọlọ	to mistreat, torture, annoy, oppress
5. Epusí mọnyọ́kọli míngi.	That's much too wearisome.

-A-

6. Zilá, náyébisa yọ́ ndéngé ya mpási tomọ́náká.	Just a minute, I'd like to tell you how we used to suffer.

	-B-	
7.	Ozáláká sodá?	You used to be a soldier?
	-A-	
8.	Áa, mwána na ngáí, koloba tę́, mosálá ya sodá ekómí mosálá ya mbǫ́ngǫ.	Oh, my child, don't mention that, military service has become a well-paying occupation.
9.	Ezaláká bísú, makambo nyǫ́nsǫ mpási.	In our time, everything was difficult.
	-B-	
10.	Obandáká sodá na mbúla bóní?	At what age did you start military service?
	-A-	
11.	Náyéba wápi. Ntángu wáná makambo ya kokomisa nkómbó ya bána na búuku ezaláká tę́.	I have no idea. In that time the names (births) of children were not recorded.
	-B-	
12.	Bóongó bozaláká kosála ndéngé níni?	Well then, how did it use to be done?
	-A-	
	-úmela	to remain, stay on, stay away
13.	Tíká násílisa elambá ya batu eúmélí míngi.	Go away and let me finish this garment.
	-B-	
14.	Tíkálá malámu, nakeí na ngáí.	Goodby, I'm going home.

-A-

15. Kęndę́ malámu, óyáka kotála ngáí ntángu mosúsu.	Goodby, come to see me again some time.

USEFUL PHRASES

Azalí kobolosé sokoto.	He's brushing the uniform.
Azalí kotíya silási na sapáto.	He's polishing his shoes.
Azalí kongęngisa lifúngú.	He's shining the buttons.
Azalí kotonga butó.	He's sewing on a button.
Matíti ya bolósi masílí.	The brush is worn out.
Abunáká na etumba.	He fought in the war.
Babomáká yé na etumba.	He was killed in the war.
Azalí mobangé.	He's an old man.
Azalí mokúsé.	He's short.
Azalí mabé,	He's ugly.
Ezalí motúya malámu.	It's cheap.
Ezalí ntálu makási.	It's expensive.

-bolosé (brosser)	to brush
bolósi (brosse)	brush
sokoto	uniform, military jacket/clothing
silási (cirage)	polish, shoepolish
-ngęngę	to shine, blaze
-tonga	to bind, tie, join, twist, braid, plait, weave, sew, expand, enlarge
butǫ́ (bouton)	button

litíti, ma-	blade of grass, sheet of paper, hair, fur, down, bristle
-buna, -bunda	to fight, wage war, wrestle, struggle
etumba, bi-	war, fight, battle, conflict
-boma	to kill, murder, hunt, catch, damage badly, destroy, extinquish, erase, wipe (off), do away with
mobangé, ba-	old person
mokúsé, mi-	short, small
motúya, mi-	price, value, number

NOTES

15.1 Intermediate Past

Náyébisa yọ́ ndéngé ya mpási tomọ́náká.

The intermediate past is marked by the /-ák-/ extension and a high-tone imperfective suffix /-á/, e.g., /tomọ́náká/, 'we saw', 'we used to see'. In general, the intermediate past refers to something that happened more than a month ago but not more than about thirty years ago. However, as with the other tenses, the time referent is not exact and refers to something that took place *between recently and a long time ago*. It very often translates '*used to*' in English and into the imperfect in French.

15.2 Distant Past

The distant past is marked by a high tone imperfective suffix /-á/ and refers to something that took place (usually) more than a generation ago, i.e., *a long time ago*, e.g., /akúfá/, 'he died (a long time ago)'.

15.3 Comparison of Intensity

Epusí mọnyọ́kọli míngi.

Intensity or excess degree of something is expressed by /-pusa/, 'to surpass', 'be very', 'be too much', e.g., /Epusí mọnyọ́kọli míngi/, 'It's much too wearisome', literally, 'It exceeds weariness much'. See also Note 9.1.

15.4 Comparison of Degree

Alekí mwási na monẹ́nẹ.

Comparison of degree is expressed by /-leka/, 'to pass by', 'exceed', /Alekí mwási na monẹ́nẹ/, 'He's bigger than his wife', literally 'He exceeds his wife in bigness'.

The 'superlative' is shown by /-leka/ plus /nyọ́nsọ/, 'all', 'every', /Alekí mibáli nyọ́nsọ na molaí/, 'He's the tallest of the men', literally, 'He exceeds all the men in length'.

15.5 Inversion of Subject and Verb

Ezaláká bisú, makambo nyọ́nsọ mpási.

One way of forming temporal subordinate clauses is to reverse the order of the subject and verb. In this type of construction, the verb prefix is /e-/. In the sentence from the dialogue, /ezaláká bisú/ means 'when we were', 'during the time we were', 'in our time'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Bambúla elekí míngi mokóló óyo azaláká sodá.	This man was a soldier many years ago.
2.	Bambúla elekí míngi nazaláká na ndáko óyo.	Many years ago I lived in that house.
3.	Ntángu nazaláká mwána nazaláká na ndáko óyo.	When I was a child, I lived in that house.

4.	Ntángu nazaláká mwána, banyama míngi bazaláká áwa.	When I was a child, there were many animals here.
5.	Ntángu tokẹndáká na mbóka, banyama míngi bazaláká áwa.	When we moved from the village, there were many animals here.
6.	Ntángu tokẹndáká na mbóka, tatá atíkáláká na mosálá ya sodá.	When we left the village, my father was a soldier.
7.	Ntángu mamá akúfáká, tatá atíkáláká na mosálá ya sodá.	When mother died, father was still a soldier.
8.	Ntángu mamá akúfáká, nazalaká naíno mwána mokẹ́.	When mother died, I was still a small child.
9.	Tatá asómbáká ndákọ na bísú ntángu nazaláká naíno mwána mokẹ́.	Father bought our house when I was still a small child.
10.	Tatá asómbáká ndáko na bísú ntángu ayáká na Leó.	Father bought this house when he came to Leopoldville.

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Alekí mwásí na monẹnẹ.	He is bigger than his wife.
2.	Alekí mwásí na molaí.	He is taller than his wife.
3.	Alekí mwásí na bambúla.	He is (a little) older than his wife.
4.	Alekí mwásí na mokúsé.	He is shorter than his wife.
5.	Alekí mwásí na mobangé.	He is (much) older than his wife.

Pattern Drill 2

1.	Mótuka óyo elekí wáná kitọkọ.	This car is prettier than that one.

2. Mótuka óyo elekí wána na makási.	This car is better-built than that one.
3. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na ntálo.	This car is more expensive than that one.
4. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na kotámbola.	This car runs faster than that one.
5. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na molaí.	This car is longer than that one.

Pattern Drill 3

1. Mótuka óyo epusí kitọ́kọ.	This car is very beautiful.
2. Mótuka óyo epusí makási.	This car is very well-built.
3. Mótuka óyo epusí ntálo.	This car is too expensive.
4. Mótuka óyo epusí kotámbola.	This car is very fast.
5. Mótuka óyo epusí molaí.	This car is too long.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ntángu nazaláká na Kinsásá, nazaláká kofánda epáí na yé.	When I lived in Leopoldville. I stayed at his house.
2. Ntángu nazaláká moyékoli, nazaláká kofánda epáí na yé.	When I was a student, I used to live at his house.
3. Ntángu nazaláká moyékoli, nazaláká kobima míngi.	When I was a student, I used to go out a lot.
4. Libosó tatá ákúfa, nazaláká kobima míngi.	Before my father died, I used to go out a lot.
5. Libosó tatá ákúfa, apésáká ngáí mótuka.	Before my father died, he gave me a car.

6. Ntángu nasílísáká kelási, apesáká ngáí mótuka.	After I finished school, he gave me a car.
7. Ntángu nasílísáká kelási, nalukáká mosálá.	After I finished school, I looked for a job.
8. Ntángu nazóngáká na Amérique, nalukáká mosálá.	After I returned from America, I looked for a job.
9. Ntángu nazóngáká na Amérique, nazaláká kokomela baningá ntángu mosúsu.	After I returned from America, I used to write to my friends occasionally.
10. Ntángu nazaláká na ntángu, nazaláká kokomela baningá ntángu mosúsu.	When I had time, I used to write to my friends occasionally.

Pattern Drill 4

1. Mwána na ngáí alekí óyo ya yọ́ na mbúla.	My son is older than yours.
2. Mwána na ngáí alekí óyo ya yọ́ na mayẹ́le.	My daughter is smarter than yours.
3. Mwána na ngáí alekí óyo ya yọ́ na kitọ́ko.	My daughter is prettier than yours.
4. Mwána na ngáí alekí óyo ya yọ́ na molaí.	My son is taller than yours.
5. Mwána na ngáí alekí óyo ya yọ́ na makási.	My son is stronger than yours.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nazaláká kokẹndẹ kolía epáí na bangó ntángu mamá akọtáká lopitálo.	I went to eat at their house when mother went to the hospital.
2. Nazaláká naínu mwána ntángu etumba ekwéyáká na mbóka.	I was still a child when the war took place in our country.

3.	Azaláká káka na mbúla zómi ntángu etumba ekwéyáká na mbóka.	He was only ten years old when the war took place in our country.
4.	Azaláká káka na mbúla zómi ntángu tatá na yé akúfáká.	He was only ten years old when his father died.
5.	Amekáká kozwá mosálá ntángu tatá na yé akúfáká.	He tried to get a job when his father died.
6.	Amekáká kozwá mosálá nsima ya mbọtámá na mwána.	He tried to get a job after the birth of his son.
7.	Ayáká na Kinsásá nsima ya mbótámá na mwána.	He came to Leopoldville after the birth of his son.
8.	Ayáká na Kinsásá ntángu azaláká kosála na masúwa.	He came to Leopoldville while he was working on a riverboat.
9.	Nayébáká yé ntángu azaláká kosála na masúwa.	I knew him while he was working on a riverboat.
10.	Nayébáká yé libosó álongwa na Kinsangani.	I knew him before he left Stanleyville.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Basodá bazingí mbóka.	The soldiers surrounded the village.
2.	Basodá baákotíya silási ya sapáto.	The soldiers are polishing their shoes.
3.	Momẹmi akẹndẹkí koluka silási ya sapáto.	The porter has gone to get some shoepolish.
4.	Momẹmi akẹndẹkí koluka butó ya sokoto.	The porter has gone to get some buttons for his uniform.
5.	Sodá óyo angangísákí butó ya sokoto.	This soldier shined his uniform buttons.

6.	Sodá óyo alekí wáná na molaí.	This soldier is taller than that one.
7.	Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na molaí.	This car is longer than that one.
8.	Mótuka óyo epusí ntálo.	This car is too expensive.
9.	Bolósi wáná epusí ntálo.	That brush is too expensive.
10.	Bolósi wáná ekómí ya kála.	That brush is old.

Unit 16

Basic Sentence

-A-

1. Libóké ya batu wáná ezalí kosálá níni?	What is that group of men doing?

-B-

-pasola	to tear, split, cleave, saw, tear up, break up, cut through
nzelá, nzilá	road, way, path, means, permission
2. Bazalí kopasola nzelá.	They are building a road through.

-A-

3. Nzelá yangó ekęndę tíí wápi?	How far is the road supposed to go?

-B-

4. Nakanísí eékokóma tíí na Matádi.	I believe it's going as far as Matadi.

-A-

5. Bakosála mikǫlǫ bóní na mayę́lę na yǫ́.	How long will it take to build in your estimation?

-B-

ngúyá, n-	strength, power, ability, quality

6.	Sọkọ́ bazalí na ngúyá, bakokí kosála sánzá mísátu toó mínei.	If they keep at it, they can do it in three or four months.
	-A-	
7.	Áwa tíí na Matádi bakilometres bóní?	How many kilometers is it from here to Matadi?
	-B-	
8.	Na aviọ́ toó na mótuka?	By plane or by car?
	-A-	
9.	Na mótuka.	By car.
	-B-	
10.	Nakanísí nkámá mínei kilometres.	I believe it's four hundred kilometers.
	-A-	
11.	Bóongó na avió?	And by plane?
	-B-	
12.	Nkámá mísátu na ntúkú motóbá na mítánu.	Three hundred sixty-five kilometers.
	-A-	
13.	Nzelá ya ndéngé nini bakosála?	What kind of road are they building?
	-B-	
	siméti (ciment)	cement
14.	Libosó, bakotíya mabángá basangísí na siméti.	First, they will pour stone(s) mixed with cement.

-túta	to strike, beat, mash, crush, bump (against)
-símba	to hold, seize
libendé, ma-	rod, post, pole, tamper, tamping stick

15.	Bakotúta na libendé mpó te esímba makási.	They will beat it out (smooth) with a tamper to make it hold (together) tightly.

-A-

16.	Bóongó na nsima?	And then?

-B-

-sopa	to pour, spill overturn, spread, unload
mokóbo, mi-	color, paint
-yínda	to become dark, black, dirty
mwíndu, míndu, moíndo	black, dark, Negro; bad character/intention; with dislike/aversion

17.	Bakosopa mokóbo ya mwíndu likoló mpó te siméti na mabángá bisímba makási.	They'll spread some black colored material on top so the cement and rocks will bond together well.

-A-

18.	Mokóbo yangó nkómbó níni?	What's the name of the black-colored material?

-B-

falansé	French
'goudron'	tar

19. Nkómbó na yangó na falansé goudron.	It's called 'goudron' in French.

-A-

putulú	cinders, ashes, dust, powder
20. Siméti níni bakotíya, ya putulú toó ya mái-mái?	What kind of cement are they to use, liquid or dry?

-B-

21. Óyo ya mái-mái.	Liquid.

USEFUL PHRASES

Dzeké eékotóka mabelé.	The steamshovel is digging up the ground.
Dzeké eékotímola libúlú.	The steamshovel is digging a hole.
Dzeké eékotóndisa mabelé na kamió.	The steamshovel is filling the trunck with earth.
Mibáli baákotímola libélá ya mái na piósi na mpáu.	The men are digging a well with picks and shovels.
Mibáli baákotímola libéla ya kabiné na piósi na mpáu.	The men are digging a toilet with picks and shovels.
Mibáli baákokunda tiyó ya mái.	The men are burying a water pipe.
Mi báli baákokunda tiyó ya gaz.	The men are burying a gas pipe.
Mibáli baákopika nzeté ya tẹlẹfọ́n.	The men are setting up a telephone pole.
Biléi bizalí elẹngi.	The food tastes good.
Biléi bizalí sụkáli.	The food tastes sweet.

Biléi bizalí ngai.	The food tastes sour.
Biléi bizalí bololo.	The food tastes bitter.
Biléi bizalí ya kopọlọ.	The food is rotten.
Biléi bizalí na móngwa.	The food is salted.
Biléi bizalí na móngwa míngi.	The food is too salty.
dzeké	steamshovel; earth mover, dump truck
-tóka	to draw water, dig out/up
mabelé	earth, ground, floor
-timola	to dig (up), turn over the soil
libúlú, ma-	well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
-tonda	to be(come) full, filled, fill
libélá, ma-	well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
kamió (camion)	truck
mpáu, mpáo, m-	shovel, spade
piósi, (pioche)	pick, pickaxe
kabiné (cabinet)	toilet; excrement
-kunda	to bury, plant
tiyó (tuyau)	pipe, tube, hose, gas
'gaz'	gas
nzeté, n-	tree, stick, pice of wood
elengi	pleasing to the senses, good taste/smell; beauty

sukáli	sugar, candy; sweet
ngai	sour(ness)
bololo	bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-pǫlǫ	to be(come) wet, soggy, rotten; be beaten, defeated
móngwa, mi-	salt

NOTES

16.1 Subject with two verbs.

Batu balálaka áwa bakęndękí lóbí.

Many subjects which have two verbs in Lingala translate into English and French as subject plus two verbs; but very often such a Lingala construction translates as subject plus adjectival relative clause plus verb, e.g., /Batu balálaka áwa bakęndękí lóbí/, 'The people who live here left yesterday', literally, 'The people they live here they left yesterday'. Note that it is the first verb in this type of sentence that translates as a relative clause.

16.2 Immediate Past of /-longwa/

Alongweí epáí azalákí kofwánda libosó.

The immediate past of /-longwa/ has /-e/ before the tense marker, e.g., /alongweí/, 'he has gone away'. See Note 2.9. Rule IV.

16.3 Indefinite Condition

Sǫkí osómbáká mǫkǫ, mbęlę babǫngisáká mosúsu.

Indefinite or improbable condition is expressed by the intermediate past in both clauses and a particle such as /mbęlę/ at the beginning of the result clause, e.g., /Sǫkí osómbáká mǫkǫ mbẹlẹ babọngísáká mosúsu/, 'If you were to buy one (but you probably won't), then they would have the other one repaired'.

Some dialects of Lingala also express indefinite condition with the immediate past in the if-clause and an indefinite particle and the future in the result clause. Thoush the student may read or perhaps hear this, he should not use it because it does not usually occur in speech and is likely to be misunderstood.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Nzelá óyo eékoleka na Bóma.	This road goes to (through) Boma.
2.	Nzelá óyo eékokóma tíí na Bóma.	This road goes to (as far as) Boma.
3.	Aviọ́ eékokóma tíí na Boma.	The airplane is going as far as Boma.
4.	Aviọ́ ekómí.	The airplane has (just) arrived.
5.	Bayékoli ya sika bakómí.	The new students have (just) arrived.
6.	Bayékoli ya sika bazalí bánsọ baíndu.	The new students are all Africans/Negroes.
7.	Batu balálaka áwa bazalí bánsọ báindu.	The people who live here are all Negroes/Africans.
8.	Batu balálaka áwa bakẹndẹ́kí lóbí.	The people who live here left yesterday.
9.	Basáli bapasóláki nzilá bakẹndẹ́kí lóbí.	The workers who built the road left yesterday.
10.	Basáli bapasóláki nzilá bakozónga lóbí.	The workers who built the road will return tomorrow.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Mpó na níni libóké ya bána óyo eékozila lisúsu?	Why is that group of children still waiting?
2.	Libóké ya bána óyo eékozila molakisi.	The group of children is waiting for the teacher.
3.	Bána bakelási bakosukola ndáko ya molakisi.	The students will clean up the teacher's house.
4.	Bána bakelási bakosukola bizaleli.	The students will wash off the chairs.
5.	Babọi baákotíya mokóbo na bizaleli.	The houseboys are painting the chairs.
6.	Babọi baákosopa mabángá na nzelá.	The boys are spreading rock on the walkway.
7.	Bangó bánsọ baákosopa mabángá na nzelá.	They are all spreading stone on the roadway.
8.	Bangó bánsọ baákokẹndẹ na Coq na aviọ́.	They are all going to Coquilhatville by plane.
9.	Mwána na ngáí aákokẹndẹ na Coq na aviọ́.	My son is going to Coquilhatville by plane.
10.	Mwána na ngáí azalí na ngúyá míngi.	My son is very strong.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Alongweí epáí azaláki kofwánda libosó.	He (has) moved. He (has) changed his address.

2.	Alongweí na Lovaniúm akómí na Kinsásá.	He has moved from Lovanium into the old section of Leopoldville.
3.	Alongweí na mosálá.	He quit his job.
4.	Alongweí na etéyelo.	He has quit school.
5.	Alongweí na mosálá ya sodá.	He has resigned from the army.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Atíkí komẹla likáyá.	He quit smoking.
2.	Atíkí mótuka na yé.	He parked his car.
3.	Abóyí mótuka na yé.	He abandoned his car.
4.	Abóyí mwásí.	He has left his wife for good.
5.	Atíkí mwásí.	He has left his wife at home.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Dzeké eékotíya mabelé na kamió.	The steamshovel is loading dirt into the truck.
2.	Basáli baákosopa mabelé na kamió.	The workmen are unloading dirt from the truck.
3.	Basáli baákobimisa bilọ́kọ na masíni.	The workmen are unloading the railroad car.
4.	Basáli baákosopa mabángá na balabálá.	The workmen are spreading rock on the road.

5.	Kamió eékosopa mabángá na balabálá.	The truck is dumping rock on the road.
6.	Kamió ezalí komęma nzeté ya tęlęfǫ́n.	The truck is carrying telephone poles.
7.	Basáli baákopika mabendé ya tęlęfǫ́n.	The workmen are setting up telephone poles.
8.	Mibáli batęlę́mísí mabendé ya tęlęfǫ́n.	The men set up the telephone poles.
9.	Mibáli batęlę́mísí madę́su na nzętę́.	The men set up sticks for the beans.
10.	Mibáli batóndísákí libúlú na mabelé.	The men filled the hole with dirt.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Akeí nsima ya ndáko.	He went to the toilet.
2.	Akeí na Bóma na mótuka.	He went to Boma by car.
3.	Akeí na Bóma na mótuka na nzilá ya sika.	He went to Boma by car by the new route.
4.	Akeí na Bóma na nzilá ya masíni.	He went to Boma by train.
5.	Akeí na Brazza na masúwa ya nsúka.	He went to Brazzaville on the last boat.

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Otobísi ekęndę tíí wápi?	How far is the bus supposed to go?
2.	Otobísi ekóma tíí wápi?	How far is the bus supposed to go?

3.	Otobísi ekóma tíí na Lovaniúm.	The bus is supposed to go far as Lovanium.
4.	Otobísi eútí na Lovaniúm	The bus came from Lovanium.
5.	Otobísi eútaka na Lovaniúm.	The bus comes from Lovanium.

Pattern Drill 2

1.	Sọ́kọ́ oyáká lẹlọ́, mbẹlẹ napésáká yọ́ nkámá mọ́kọ́.	If you were to come today, I'd give you a thousand francs.
2.	Sọ́kí osómbáká mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ napésáká yọ́ nkámá mọ́kọ́.	If you were to buy one, I'd give you a thousand francs.
3.	Sọ́kí osómbáká mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ babọngísáká mosúsu.	If you were to buy one, they would have the other one repaired.
4.	Sọ́kí obọngísáká ndáko óyo, mbẹlẹ babọngísáká mosúsu.	If you were to have this house repaired, they would have the other one repaired.
5.	Sọ́kí obọngísáká ndáko óyo, mbẹlẹ okokáká kotẹ́kisa yangó.	If you were to repair this house, you would be able to sell at a profit.
6.	Sọ́kọ́ ozíláká sánzá mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okokáká kotẹ́kisa yangó.	If you were to wait a month, you would be able to sell it at a profit.
7.	Sọ́kọ́ ozíláká sánzá mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okẹndẹ́kẹ́ na Leó.	If you waited a month, you would be able to go to Leopoldville.
8.	Sọ́kí ozaláká na nkótó mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okẹndẹ́kẹ́ na Leó.	If you had a thousand francs, you could go to Leopoldville.
9.	Sọ́kí ozaláká na nkótó mọ́kọ́, mbẹlẹ okokáká kosómba bilambá.	If you had a thousand francs, you could buy some clothes.
10.	Sọ́kọ́ okẹndẹ́ na Kinsásá, mbélé okokáká kosómba bilambá.	If you went to Leopoldville, you could buy some clothes.

Unit 17

Basic Sentences

-A-

sọfẹ́lẹ, ba- (chauffeur)	driver, chauffeur
1. Ẹ́e! Sọfẹ́lẹ, kangá mótuka na yọ kúná.	Hey! Driver, stop your car over there.

-B-

2. Elọ́kọ nini nasálí kó gendarme? Nabomí moto?	Well, officer, what did I do? Did I kill somebody?

-A-

mwínda	light, lamp
motáné	bright red/yellow/orange
-pela	to be on fire, burn, be lit
3. Ozalí komọ́na mwínda tẹ́?	Didn't you see the red light?
4. Óyo ya motáné epelí mpó na nini?	What (do you think) red lights are for?
5. Oyébí kotẹlẹmẹ mpó nakozila mokẹ́ tẹ́?	Don't you know to wait?

-B-

6. Pardon, namọ́nákí mwínda malámu tẹ.	I'm sorry. I didn't see the light very well.

-A-

7. Omọ́ní malámu tẹ́?	You didn't see it very well?
'permis de conduire'	driver's license
8. Lakísá ngáí permis de conduire na yọ́.	Show me your driver's license.

	-B-	
9.	Ezalí tẹ́, mpó nabandí koyékola kotámbwisa mótuka káka sika.	I don't have any because I've only just started to learn to drive.
	-A-	
	mpáku, mpáko, m-	tax, corvée labor
10.	Bóongó búuku na yọ ya mpáku?	And your identification book?
11.	Ozalí mpé na yangó tẹ́?	Don't you have it either?
	-B-	
	má	Here! Take it!
	-fúta	to pay; atone, make up for
12.	Má, yangó óyo. Kási naínu nafútí mpáku ya mbúla óyo tẹ́.	Here, take it. But I haven't paid my tax this year yet.
	-A-	
13.	Landá ngáí na Commune ya Kalámu.	Follow me to the Kalamu Commune.
	-B-	
	komisẹlẹ (commissaire)	commissioner, policeman
14.	Tẹ́, Komisẹ́lẹ, mótuka ezalí ya ngáí tẹ́.	No, Officer, the car doesn't belong to me.
	lománde (n-) (amende)	fine, penalty
15.	Lománde ya bóní olingí náfúta?	How much of a fine do you want me to pay?
	-A-	
	pósi (poche)	pocket, pouch, sack
16.	Ozalí na nkóto mọkọ́ sika óyo na pósi na yọ?	Do you have a thousand francs in your pocket right now?

-B-

avási (avance)	advance, part payment, deposit
17. Tẹ́, nápésa avási, bóongó nákẹndẹ koluka ndámbo mosúsu na mbóka.	No, let me give a deposit and then let me go home to get the rest.

-A-

bolọ́kọ, ma-	jail, prison
makẹlẹ́lẹ	quarrel, argument, sound of voices, noise
18. Mwána, sọ́kọ́ olíngí bolọ́kọ tẹ́, tíká makẹlẹ́lẹ mpé landá ngáí. Esílí!	Boy, if you don't want to go to jail, shut up and follow me. And that's final!

-B-

19. Nayókí yọ́, Komisẹ́lẹ.	I understand you, Officer.

USEFUL PHRASES

Obúngi mibéko ya nzilá.	You've broken the traffic laws.
Obúngí matéya.	You don't know your lesson.
Obúngí nzilá ya mbóka.	You've lost your way home.
Obúngí nzilá ya kozónga na Leó.	You've lost the road to Leopoldville.
Polísi abọ́tọ́lí paláki ya mótuka na yé.	The police confiscated his auto plates.
Polísi abọ́tọ́lí mótuka na yé mpó azwí likámá na mótuka.	The police confiscated his car because he had an accident.
Mopaya akangí mótuka mpembéní na balabálá.	The stranger parked his car on the side of the street.

Mopaya akangí mótuka na nsúka na balabálá.	The stranger parked his car at the corner of the street.
Mopaya akọtísí mótuka na kátı ya lopángo.	The stranger parked his car in the yard/driveway.
Komisẹ́lẹ apésí yé kovokasió mpó atámbwísí mótuka mbángu makási.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he was speeding
Komisẹ́lẹ apésí yé kovokasió mpó akangísí mótuka esíká ya mabé.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he was parked illegally.
Komisẹ́lẹ apésí yé kovokasió mpó atútí motu ya nkínga.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he ran into a man on a bicycle.

-búnga	to forget; make a mistake, be wrong; lose, get lost, lose one's way; die
mobéko, mi-	law, regulation, obligation, duty
litéya, ma-	lesson
polísi (police)	policeman, police
-bọ́tọlọ	to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound, pillage
paláki (plaque)	plate, plaque, auto license plate
likámá, ma-	accident, danger; punishment
mopaya, ba-	stranger, guest, visitor, host

mpembéní, m-	side, edge; beside, along, next to, around, near
lopángo, m-	enclosure; fence; plot of land, place of residence
kovokasió (convocation)	notice, summons, traffic ticket
nkínga, n-	bicycle

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Atę́lę́mísí mótuka mpembéní na ndáko.	He parked the car beside the house.
2. Akangísí mótuka mpembéní na ndáko.	He stopped the car beside the house.
3. Akangísí mótuka libosó ya mwínda motáné.	He stopped the car at the red light.
4. Mítuka mínsǫ mikangámí libosó ya mwínda motáné.	All the cars are stopped at the red light.
5. Mítuka mínsǫ mikangámí mpó mwínda motáné epelí.	All the cars are stopped because the light is red.
6. Mótuka monę́nę etę́lę́mí mpó mwínda motáné epelí.	The big truck stopped because the light is red.
7. Mótuka monę́nę etę́lę́mí nsima ya magazíni.	The big truck stopped behind the store.
8. Nzelá ezalí nsima ya magazíni.	There is a street behind the store.
9. Nzelá ezalí na batu míngi.	There are many people on the street.

10.	Mbóka na bísú ezalí na batu míngi.	There are many people in our village.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Baníngá na ngáí baákotámbóla mbángu.	My friends are in a hurry.
2.	Baníngá na ngáí bafútélí ngáí lománde.	My friends paid the fine for me.
3.	Mokonzi afútélí ngáí lománde.	The chief paid the fine for me.
4.	Mokonzi amọ́ní mwínda motáné tẹ́.	The chief didn't see the red light.
5.	Basálí bamọ́ní mwínda motáné tẹ́.	The workers didn't see the red light.
6.	Basálí bakeí koluka mbọ́ngọ́ ya sánzá.	The workers have gone to get their (monthly) pay.
7.	Mokakisi akeí koluka mbọ́ngọ ya sánzá.	The teacher has gone to get his salary.
8.	Molakisi aákopelisa mabáyá.	The teacher is burning the wood.
9.	Bána aákopelisa mabáyá.	The boys are burning wood.
10.	Bána baákoyékola kotámbwisa mótuka.	The boys are learning to drive.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Bolangítí ekúfí.	The blanket is worn out.
2.	Bolangítí epasúkí.	The blanket is torn up/worn out.
3.	Sapáto epasúkí.	The shoes are torn up/worn out.
4.	Sapáto ekómí ya kála.	The shoes are old.

5.	Pataló ekómí ya kála.	The pants are old.
6.	Pataló ezalí motúya malámu.	The pants are inexpensive.
7.	Kazáka ezalí motúya malámu.	The jacket is cheap.
8.	Kazáka eútí na Bruxelles.	The coat is from Brussels.
9.	Libóké eútí na Bruxelles.	The package came from Brussels.
10.	Libóké etíndámákí na avio̩.	The package was sent by air.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Kilió̩ níni ozalí na yangó.	What pencil do you have?
2.	Kilió̩ ya náni ozalí na yangó?	Whose pencil do you have?
3.	Kilió̩ ya ndéngé níni ozalí na yangó?	What kind of pencil do you have?
4.	Mótuka ya ndéngé níni ozalí na yangó?	What kind of car do you have?
5.	Mótuka níni ozalí na yangó?	What make of car do you have?

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Nabandí koyékola kotámbwisa mótuka káka sika óyo.	I've only just started to learn to drive.
2.	Nabandí kosukola ndáko káka sika óyo.	I've only just started to clean up the house.
3.	Nabandí kopakola mokóbo na mésa.	I've only just started to paint the table.
4.	Nabandí kobo̩ngisa masíni ya mikandá káka sika óyo.	I've only just started repairing the typewriter.
5.	Nabandí kokitisa biló̩ko̩ na kamió káka sika óyo.	I've only just started unloading the truck.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Komisẹ́lẹ abóyí kozwá mbọ́ngọ.	The policeman refused to accept the money.
2.	Komisẹ́lẹ abọ́tọ́lí yé búuku ya mpáku.	The policeman took away his ID card.
3.	Bourgmestre ya Commune ya Kalámu abọ́tọ́lí yé búuku ya mpáku.	The mayor of Kalamu Commune confiscated his ID card.
4.	Bourgmestre ya Commune ya Kalámu abóyí makẹlẹ́lẹ.	The mayor of Kalamu Commune doesn't like noise.
5.	Mobangé óyo abóyí makẹlẹ́lẹ.	The old man doesn't like noise.
6.	Mobangé óyo afwándí áwa tíí na ntọ́ngọ́.	The old man has been sitting here since this morning.
7.	Mopaya wáná afwándí áwa tíí na ntọ́ngọ́.	That stranger has been sitting here since this morning.
8.	Mopaya wáná abúngí nzelá ya mbóka na yé.	That stranger can't remember the way back to his village.
9.	Motu ya mabáyá abúngí nzelá ya mbóka na yé.	The carpenter can't remember the way back to his village.
10.	Motu ya mabáyá abọ́tọ́lí ebẹ́tẹli na mwána.	The carpenter took the hammer away from the child.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Atútání na nzeté.	He walked into a tree.
2.	Mótuka etútí nzeté.	The car crashed into a tree.
3.	Mótuka etútí motu ya nkínga.	The car hit a man on a bicycle.
4.	Polísi akangí motu ya nkínga.	The police arrested a man on a bicycle.

5.	Polísi akangí sofẹlẹ alekí mwínda motáné.	The police arrested the driver who ran the red light.
6.	Tozalí koluka sofẹlé alekí mwínda motáné.	We are looking for the driver who ran the red light.
7.	Tozalí koluka mobáli akangí lopángo.	We are looking for the man who fenced the plot of ground.
8.	Mopaya ayébí mobálí akángí lopángo.	The visitor knows the man who is getting engaged.
9.	Mopaya ayébí kopelisa mwínda.	The stranger knows how to light the lamp.
10.	Natúní mwásí ápelisela ngáí mwínda.	I asked the woman to light the lamp for me.

Unit 18

Basic Sentences

-A-	
-tónga	to build, construct
1. Nayókí te otóngísí ndáko ya sika.	I've heard that you've had a new house built.
-B-	
sọ́ọlọ́	true, real, right; truth
2. Ẹẹ, ezalí ya sọ́ọlọ́.	Yes, that's true.
-A-	
bríki (brique)	brick
-tumba	to burn, set fire, to roast over/in a fire
3. Ezalí ya bríki ya kotumba toó ya siméti?	Is it made out of fired bricks or cement?
-B-	
4. Ezalí ya bríki ya kotumbama.	It's made of fired bricks.
-A-	
eténi, bi-	piece, part, share; room
5. Bozalí na biténi bóní ndáko?	How many rooms do you have?
-B-	
6. Biténi mítánu.	Five rooms.

-A-

	-po̩no̩	to choose, select, elect
	lángi	paint, color
7.	Náni apo̩ní lángi ya ndáko?	Who chose the paint for your house?

-B-

8.	Mamá moto apo̩nákí yangó.	It was mother who chose it.
	líso, lísu, ⊙míso, ⊙mísu	eye, (in pl.) with eyes open, with good vision/ taste, unafraid
9.	Oyébí té̩ te básí bazalí na mísu malámu?	Don't you know that women have excellent taste?

-A-

	lokóla, (n-)	kind, sort; also, too; as, like, such as, similar, same sort
10.	Olóngí, ezalí ya só̩o̩ló̩.	You're right, it's true.
11.	Na káti mpé ezalí lokóla na libándá?	Is the interior also the same color as the outside?

-B-

12.	Ntína níni?	For what reason/why should it be?
13.	Na ndáko ya kolía, ezalí mái ya mpo̩ndú.	In the dining room, it's green.
	sokolá (chocolat)	brown, dark red
14.	Na ndáko ya kosolola, sokolá.	In the living room, brown.
15.	Na bandáko mosúsu, mwíndu, toó mpe̩mbé̩, toó mái ya malála.	In the other rooms, gray, white, or orange.

-A-

16. Bozalí bóní na libótá?	How many are there in your family?
17. Náni mwána ya libosó, mwásí toó mobáli?	Who is the oldest child, a girl or a boy?

-B-

17. Tozalí motóbá, mwána mwásí moto azalí libosó.	There are six of us (children). The oldest is a girl.

-A-

18. Bínú nyọ́nsọ bokẹndẹkẹ kelási, toó bána misúsu batíkala mpó na kopésa mamá mabọ́kọ?	Do you all go to school or do some of the children stay home to give your mother a hand?

-B-

19. Mísátu ya mikẹ́ naínu bakómísí bangó na kelási tẹ́.	The three smallest haven't started to school yet.

-B-

-kúta	to meet, find, come upon
20. Malámu, nakeí naínu kolía, tokokútana nsima.	Good, I'm going to eat now, we'll see each other later.
21. Kẹndẹ́ malámu.	Goodby.

USEFUL PHRASES

Eténi ya kobómba bilambá ezalí motánéso.	The closet is (painted) yellow.
Eténi ya kobómba bilọ́ko ezalí motánéso.	The storage room is tan.

Eténi ya kobómba biléi ezalí bulé.	The pantry is blue.
Kọ́mbá ndáko.	Sweep the floor.
Sukóla ndáko.	Mop the floor.
Púpólá putulú likoló ya mesá na kíti.	Dust off the furniture.
Kulútu na ngáí aákotánga zulunálo.	My older brother is reading the paper.
Léki na ngáí aákotánga zulunálo.	My younger brother is reading the paper.
Bokiló na ngáí aákotánga zulunálo.	My father-in-law is reading the paper.
Kóko na ngáí aákotánga zulunálo.	My grandfather is reading the paper.
Mbanda na ngáí aákotánga zulunálo.	My co-wife is reading the paper.
Bísú na yé tokómí mbanda.	We no longer like each other. (lit.) We have become in-laws.
Akeí ndọ́bọ.	He has gone fishing.
Akeí bokila.	He has gone hunting.
Aákokálinga makeí na kúku.	She's frying eggs in the kitchen.
Aákotọkisa makeí na kúku.	She's boiling eggs in the kitchen.
Aákotumba nyama.	She's roasting meat over the fire.
-bómba	to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
motánéso	light yellow/tan/beige
bulé (bleu)	blue
-kọ́mbọ, -kọ́mba	to sweep, clean house, empty

-pupa	to blow, fan, winnow, make clean by blowing/shaking
kulútu, ba-	older brother/sister
-tánga	to read, count, enumerate, add up
zulunálo (journal)	newspaper, magazine
léki, ba-	younger brother/sister
bokiló, ⊗bakiló	parent-in-law, brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintance
kóko, ba-	grandparents, grandchild
mbanda, ba-	co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister, sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ndọ́bọ, n-	fishing, fishhook
bokila, ma-	hunt(ing)
-kálinga, kálanga	to fry, bake, roast
likeí, ma-	egg
kúku	kitchen
-tọkọ	to boil, be boiling

NOTES

18.1 /-zala ya/

Ezalí ya sọ́ọlọ́.

Ezalí ya bríki ya kotúmba toó ya siméti?

/-zala ya/ means 'to consist of', 'be made out of', as in the sentence above: 'It is true', literally 'It consists of the truth'; 'Is it made out of fired bricks or cement?

18.2 Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject

Mamá moto apọnákí yangó.

Equational sentences (See Note 6.1) whose second element begin with /moto/ or /bato/ are used to give special emphasis to the subject. In this type of sentence, /moto/ often translates, 'the one who', 'the person who', as in the sentence above, 'Mother (is) the one who chose it.' /apọnákí yangó/ is an adjective relative clause (See Note 5.10) in this sentence.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Libótá ezalí na eténi ya kolía.	The family is in the dining room.
2.	Libótá ezalí na eténi ya kolámba bilọ́kọ.	The family is in the kitchen.
3.	Bakulútu na yọ́ ya mibáli bazalí na eténi ya kolámba bilọ́kọ.	Your older brothers are in the kitchen.
4.	Bakulútu na yọ́ ya mibáli bazalí na biténi ya kolála.	Your brothers are in their bedroom.
5.	Baléki na ngáí bazalí na biténi ya kolála.	My younger brothers and sisters are in their bedrooms.
6.	Baléki na ngáí bazalí kotumba bríki.	My younger brothers are firing bricks.
7.	Batu bazalí kotumba bríki.	The men are firing bricks.

8.	Batu batóngákí ndáko na bríki ya kotumba.	The men built the house of fired brick.
9.	Ndáko etóngámáká na bríki ya kotumba.	The house was built out of fired brick.
10.	Ndáko etóngámáká na mabángá ná mabáyá.	The house was built out of stone and wood.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Mwána amọnánáká libosó ya ndáko.	The boy was seen in front of the house.
2.	Mótuka emónánáká libosó ya ndáko.	The car was seen in front of the house.
3.	Mótuka ebọngísámáká na mécanicien.	The truck was repaired by the mechanic.
4.	Aviọ ebọngísámáká na mécanicien.	The plane was repaired by the mechanic.
5.	Aviọ eyókámáká na bána.	The airplane was heard by the children.
6.	Basáleli bayókámáká na bána.	The servants were heard by the children.
7.	Basáleli batúnámáká na mokonzi.	The servants were questioned by the chief.
8.	Basáli batúnámáká na mokonzi.	The workers were questioned by the chief.
9.	Basáli bazalí kotúnama na gendarme.	The workers are being questioned by the policeman.
10.	Mwásí azalí kotúnama na gendarme.	The woman is being questioned by the police.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Olongí, ndáko na bangó ezalí ya bríki motáné.	You're right, their house is built out of red bricks.
2.	Olongí na likambo olobí.	You're correct in what you said.
3.	Násála níni na likambo olobí?	What should I do about the thing you just mentioned?
4.	Násála níni mpóo náyéba koloba Lingála?	How should I go about learning Lingala?
5.	Lakísá ngáí mayẹ́le mpóo náyéba koloba Lingála.	Show me a good system for learning Lingala.
6.	Lakísá ngáí mayẹ́lẹ ya kolámba mpọndú.	Show me how to cook manioc leaves.
7.	Tokotúna nsima ya kolámba mpọndú.	We'll discuss it after fixing the manioc leaves.
8.	Tokotúna nsima ya ndọ́bọ.	We'll discuss it after fishing.
9.	Nakangákí mbísi míngi na ndọ́bọ.	I caught a lot of fish with a hook and line.
10.	Nakangákí mbísi míngi na ebale.	I caught a lot of fish in the river.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Bókẹndẹ kopésa mamá mabọ́kọ.	Go give mother a hand.
2.	Bókẹndẹ kopésa tatá nkínga ákẹndẹ mosálá.	Go give your father the bicycle so he can go to work.
3.	Bọngísélá tatá nkínga ákẹndẹ mosálá.	Fix the bicycle for your father so he can go to work.
4.	Bọngísélá yé lokolo ya sapátu.	Repair the shoes for him.

5.	Babúngísélí yé lokolo ya sapátu.	His shoes were lost.
6.	Babúngísélí mwána ndembó.	Somebody lost the child's ball.
7.	Tatá ya Pólo aákokęndę kosómbela mwána ndembó.	Paul's father is going to buy the child a ball.
8.	Tatá ya Pólo aákokęndę kosómbela ngáí makeí ya nsósó na zándu.	Paul's father is going to the market to buy me some eggs.
9.	Mbanda aákokęndę kosómbela ngáí makeí ya nsósó na zándu.	My co-wife has gone to the market to buy me some eggs.
10.	Mbanda atumbí nyama na kúku.	My co-wife roasted the meat in the kitchen.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Nakǫ́tísí mótuka na ndáko na yangó.	I put the car in the garage/ carport.
2.	Nakǫ́tísí mótuka na káti ya lopángo.	I parked the car in the yard/ driveway.
3.	Bána baákosakana na káti ya lopángo.	The children are playing in the yard.
4.	Bána baákosakana na libándá ya Stade Baudouin.	The boys are going to play at Stade Baudouin.
5.	Lisano eékosálama na libándá ya Stade Baudouin.	The game is going to be played at Stade Baudouin.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Nazalaka na ndáko ya nsúka.	I live in the last house.
2.	Nazalaka na ndáko ya libosó.	I live in the first house.
3.	Nazalaka na ndáko wáná ya mpẹmbẹ ya libosó.	I live in the first white house.
4.	Nazalaka na ndáko wáná na lọbọkọ ya mwásí.	I live in the house on the left.
5.	Nazalaka na ndáko wáná na lọbọkọ ya mobáli.	I live in the house on the right.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1.	Etéyelo ezalí ya bríki ya kotumba.	The school is made of fired bricks.
2.	Etéyelo etóngámákí ntángu ya elanga.	The school was built during the dry season.
3.	Ndáko ya kolála etóngámákí ntángu ya elanga.	The bedroom was built during the dry season.
4.	Ndáko ya kolála ezalí mái ya mpọndú.	The bedroom is green.
5.	Efándeli ya kelási ezalí mái ya mpọndú.	The desks are green.
6.	Efándeli ya kelási ezalí sɔkolá.	The desks are brown.
7.	Eteni ya kobómba bilei ezalí sokolá.	The pantry is painted brown.

8.	Eténi ya kobómba biléi ekọ́mbámákí.	The pantry has been swept.
9.	Ndáko nyọ́nsọ ya kolála bikọ́mbámákí.	All the bedrooms had been swept.
10.	Ndáko nyọ́nsọ ya kolála bisukwámákí na bakulútu na ngáí ya básí.	All the bedrooms were mopped by my older sisters.

Unit 19

Basic Sentences

-A-	
1. Mónika!	Monique!
-B-	
2. Mamá!	Yes, Mother.
-A-	
3. Wápi yo̩?	Where are you?
-B-	
4. Nazalí komísukola nzótu.	I'm taking a bath.
-A-	
no̩kí	fast, quick, prompt
5. Sálá no̩kí ósómbela ngáí biló̩ko̩ na zándu.	Hurry up and go get me some things at the market.
-B-	
-zoka	to be injured, to be touched
mosai, monsai, mosapi, mi-	finger, toe
6. Tíndá María, namízokísákí lóbí na minsai.	Send Marie, I hurt my fingers yesterday.

-A-	
7. Omízokísákí na níni?	What did you hurt yourself with?
-B-	
8. Na mbẹlí ya mésa.	With a table knife.
-A-	
9. Wápi epáí?	Where were you?
-B-	
'ville'	city, town, downtown
10. Lóbí na ndáko ya moningá na ngáí mọ́kọ́ na ville.	Yesterday at one of my friend's house in town.
-A-	
11. Bóongó, oókozila níni mpó ókẹndẹ na múnganga?	Well, why are you waiting to go to the doctor's?
-B-	
12. Nakokẹndẹ nsima sọ́kọ́ nasílísí komísukola.	I'll go later when I've finished taking my bath.
-A-	
kitúnga, litúnga, ma-	a basket with a lid
13. María, kamátá kitúnga ósómbela ngáí bilọ́kọ na zándu.	Marie, take the market basket and go buy me some things at the market.
-B-	
lipúta, ma-	pagne, long wrap-around skirt
litambála, kitambála, ma-	handkerchief, towel, cloth, napkin

14. Mamá, nakomísómbela mpé lipúta ná litambála namọ́náki.	I'll also buy myself the pagne and headscarf that I saw.

USEFUL PHRASES

Motu ya kabínda aákokáta monkọlọ́tọ na kiliyọ́.	The carpenter is drawing a line with a pencil.
Motu ya kabínda azéngí ndámbo ya libáyá.	The cabinetmaker cut off a piece of the wood.
Motu ya kabínda akobólí libáyá na biténi.	The carpenter cut the piece of wood in half.
Mópẹ akangí gbagba fotó.	The priest took a picture of the bridge.
Mópẹ akangí bwátu fotó.	The priest took a picture of the dugout canoe.
Mópẹ akangí mokili fotó na masúwa.	The priest took a picture of the mainland from the boat.
Mópẹ azalí kolúka bwátu.	The priest is rowing the boat.
Mópẹ azalí kolúka nkáí.	The priest is rowing.
Mamá mokẹ́ngeli aákopúsa mwána mokẹ́ na púsupúsu.	The governess is pushing the baby in the stroller.
Mamá mokẹ́ngeli aákomẹlisa mwána mokẹ́ míliki.	The babysitter is feeding the baby milk.
Mamá mọbọ́kọli aákolátisa mwána mokẹ́ bilambá.	The governess is dressing the baby.
Mamá mọbọ́kọli aákolakisa mwána kokáta mái.	The babysitter is teaching the child to swim.
Abóngólí Angelé na Lingála.	He translated it from English into Lingála.

Abóngólí káwa na sukáli.	He stirred sugar into his coffee.
Abóngólí kíti.	He turned the chair around.
Akwéí na kíti.	He turned over in the chair. He fell out of the chair.
Akweísí kíti na mabelé.	He turned the chair over.

kabínda, ba-	carpenter, cabinet-maker
-káta	to cut, chop
monkọlọ́tọ, mi-	line
-zénga	to cut off, chop off
mópẹ, mómpẹ, ba- (mon père)	priest (Catholic)
gbagba	bridge
fotó (photo)	photograph, picture
bwátu, °mátu	dugout canoe, native boat
mokili, mi-	mainland, land, interior, inland, world
-luka	to row/paddle a boat
nkáí, n-	paddle, oar
-púsa (pousser?)	to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)	pushcart, baby carriage, stroller
míliki	milk
-bọ́kọlọ	to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animal)
Angelé (anglais)	English
káwa	coffee
-kwéya	to fall; be involved in/lose a lawsuit

NOTES

19.1 Reflexive

Nazalí komísukola nzótu.

The reflexive prefix /-mí/ means 'to do something to/for oneself'. /-mí/ is prefixed to the base and occurs with all persons, e.g., /Nazalí komísukola nzotu/, 'I'm taking a bath', literally, 'I'm washing myself the body'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Namísukolaka nzótu na ntọ́ngọ́ nyọ́nsọ.	I take a bath every morning.
2.	Namísukolaka nzótu na mpókwa nyọ́nsọ.	I take a bath every evening.
3.	Amísómbelaka nyama na mpókwa nyọ́nsọ.	He buys some meat for himself every evening.
4.	Amísómbelaka nyama epáí ya batẹ́kinyama.	He buys meat for himself at the butcher's (meatsellers').
5.	Amízokísí epáí ya batẹ́kinyama.	He injured himself at the butcher's.
6.	Amízokísí na mbẹlí ya mésa.	He injured himself with a table knife.
7.	Amísálélí ekéko na mbélí ya mésa.	He made himself a statue with the knife.
8.	Amísálélí ndáko ya mabáyá.	He built himself a frame house.
9.	Tokomísómbela ndáko ya mabáyá.	We are going to buy ourselves a frame house.
10.	Tokomísómbela bilambá ya sika.	We are going to buy ourselves some new clothes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Ndáko ya bísú ezalí mpembéní na nzelá.	Our house is near the road.
2.	Tomọ́ní bána bakelási mpembéní na nzelá.	We saw some school children near the road.
3.	Tomọ́ní bána bakelási na motéi na bangó.	We saw some school children with their teacher.
4.	Bayékoli bakẹndẹ́kí na ville na motéi na bangó.	The students have gone into town with their teacher.
5.	Bayékoli bakẹndẹ́kí na ville komísómbela sapátu.	The students have gone into town to buy themselves some shoes.
6.	Kulútu na ngáí azalí kozila mpó ámísómbela sapátu.	My brother is waiting to buy some shoes.
7.	Kulútu na ngáí azalí kozila ngáí na nzelá.	My brother is waiting for me out on the street.
8.	Atíkí ngáí na nzelá.	He let me out at the road.
9.	Atíkí bilambá na ndáko.	He left the clothes at the house.
10.	Atíndélí ngáí bilambá na ndáko.	She sent me the clothes at the house.

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Nazalí komítúna sọ́kọ́ mbúla ezalí konọ́kọ.	I wonder if it's raining.
2.	Nazalí komítúna sọ́kọ́ akoyáa.	I wonder if she's coming.
3.	Nazalí komítúna mpó na níni ayákí lóbí.	I wonder why he came yesterday.

4.	Nazalí komítúna epáí azalí.	I wonder where he is.
5.	Nazalí komítúna sọ́kọ́ azalí nání.	I wonder who he is.
6.	Nazalí komítúna epáí natíkí mafungóla.	I wonder where I put my keys.
7.	Nazalí komítúna ndéngé níni akómí áwa.	I wonder how he got here.
8.	Nazalí komítúna ntángu níni akozónga.	I wonder when he'll get back.
9.	Nazalí komítúna sọ́kọ́ ayébí epáí tozalí.	I wonder if he knows where we are.
10.	Nazalí komítúna sọ́kọ́ azwí mokandá.	I wonder if he received the letter.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Mọ́pẹ amisombélí masíni ya fotó.	The priest bought himself a camera.
2.	Mópẹ abóngólí mokandá ya Angelé na Falansé.	The priest translated the letter from English to French.
3.	Moyékwisi abóngólí mokandá ya Angelé na Falansé.	The instructor translated the letter from English into French.
4.	Moyékwisi akwéí na kíti.	The instructor turned over in his chair.
5.	Mofúteli akwéí na kíti.	The tenant turned over in his chair.
6.	Mofúteli apésí ngáí mbọngọ ya ndáko.	The tenant paid me the rent.

7.	Kabínda apésí ngáí mbọngọ ya ndáko.	The carpenter paid me the rent.
8.	Kabínda abóngóláki ebómbeli ya búuku.	The carpenter turned the bookcase around.
9.	Bọ́i apúpólí káti ya ebómbeli ya búuku.	The houseboy dusted the inside of the bookcase.
10.	Bọ́i apúpólí likoló ya ebómbeli ya basáni.	The houseboy dusted the outside of the china cabinet.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Abóngólí káwa na sukáli.	He stirred sugar into his coffee.
2.	Mónika abóngólí káwa na sukáli.	Monique stirred sugar into her coffee.
3.	Mónika alingí litambála na lipúta.	Monique wants a pagne and kerchief.
4.	Léki na yé aákosómba mpé litambála na lipúta.	Her younger sister is also going to buy a pagne and kerchief.
5.	Léki na yé aákosomba mpé mbẹlí ya kúku.	Her younger sister is also going to buy a butcher knife.
6.	Namíkatí monsai na mbẹlí ya kúku.	I cut my finger with a butcher knife.
7.	Namíkatí monsai na mọnọkọ ya ndáko.	I cut my finger on the door.
8.	Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya mpọndú na mọnọkọ ya ndáko.	We will paint the door again.
9.	Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya mpọndú na bilambá ya sika.	We are going to dye the new dress green.
10.	Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya malála na bilambá ya sika.	We are going to dye the new dresses orange.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Mamá mokę́ngęli aákopúsa mwána mokę́ na púsupúsu.	The babysitter is pushing the baby in the buggy.
2.	Kóko mwásí aákopúsa mwána mǫkę́ na púsupúsu.	The grandmother is pushing the baby in the buggy.
3.	Kóko mwásí aákolátisa mwána mokę́ bilambá.	The grandmother is dressing the baby.
4.	Tatá mwásí aákolatísa mwána mokę́ bilambá.	The (baby's) aunt is dressing the baby.
5.	Tatá mwásí aákoléisa mwána mokę́.	The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby.
6.	Kulútu mwásí aákoléisa mwána mokę́.	The (baby's) older sister is feeding the baby.
7.	Kulútu mwásí akangí mwána mokę́ fotó.	The (baby's) older sister took a picture of the baby.
8.	Mópę akangí mwána mokę́ fotó.	The priest took the baby's picture.
9.	Mópę azalákí kotánga zulunálo ya lęlǫ́.	The priest was reading today's paper.
10.	Kabínda atóngí ndáko ya bisú azalákí kotánga zulunálo ya lęlǫ́.	The carpenter who built our house was reading today's paper.

19.2 Compound Agent Nouns

Amísómbelaka epáí ya batę́kinyama.

/batę́kinyama/ is a compound agent noun, meaning 'meatsellers'. The agentive element is first and the qualifying noun second, e.g., /batę́kinyama/ is literally 'sellersmeat', and /molukinyama/, 'hunter' is literally 'searcheranimal'. Both nouns in this type of compound have their class prefixes, singular and plural, as the case

may be. Such a compound noun is written as a single word in this manual, but regular orthography writes two words.

19.3 Kinship Terminology.

Tatá mwásí aákoléisa mwána mokẹ́.

The system of classifying relatives used by speakers of Lingala is quite different from that used by speakers of English. Consequently, translation of kinship terms can only be approximated. In the example above, The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby', /tatá mwásí/ corresponds only partially to 'aunt'. It means 'father's sister' and certain other female relatives of one's father, e.g., 'paternal grandfather's brother's daughter'.

One's mother's sister is /mamá/ i.e., 'mother', likewise /tatá/ is also 'father's brother.' There is a special term for 'maternal uncle', /nọ́kọ/, (Cf. Dialogue 6.)

There is not sufficient space in this manual for a detailed discussion of social organization and kinship terminology. Interested students can read a standard anthropological work, such as Murdock, G.P., Social Structure, Macmillan, New York, 1949.

Unit 20

Basic Sentences

-A-	
'ambassade'	embassy
1. Áwa Ambassade ya Amérique?	Is this the American Embassy?
-B-	
2. Yangó mpenzá. Oókoluka níni?	Indeed it is. What do you want?
-A-	
víza (visa)	visa
mobémbo, mi-	journey, trip
3. Nayéí mpó na visa. Nalingí nákęndę mobémbo na Amérique.	I've come for a visa. I want to make a trip to America.
-B-	
4. Okęndę kosála níni kúná?	What do you intend to do there?
-A-	
5. Nakeí koyékola.	I'm leaving to go to school.
-B-	
6. Osílí omíkomísí nkómbó na universíté óyo okokęndę?	Have you already been admitted to the university to which you are going?
-A-	
7. Ę́ę, na Université ya California.	Yes, at the University of California.

-B-	
8. Elǫ́kǫ níni okoyékola?	What are you going to study?
-A-	
9. Sciences économiques.	Economics.
-B-	
10. Mbúla bóní okoúmela kúná?	How many years are you going to stay?
-A-	
11. Mínei toó mítánu.	Four or five.
-B-	
12. Náni akofútela yǫ́ kelási, babóti?	Who will pay for your schooling, your parents?
-A-	
'bourse d'études'	scholarship
13. Nazwákí bourse d'études na gouvernement américain.	I have received a scholarship from the American Government.
-B-	
-tǫ́ndǫ	to wish, hope, thank
mobémbo, mi-	trip, journey, voyage
ó	toward, to; at, in, on, by
14. Malámu, naákotǫ́ndǫ yǫ́ mobémbo malámu ó Amérique, mpé óyékolaka makási.	Fine, I hope you have a good trip to America, and study hard.
-B-	
15. Melesí, ótíkala malámu, sǫ́kǫ tokomǫ́nana lisúsu tę.	Thanks, and goodby, in case we don't see each other again.

USEFUL PHRASES

Moyángeli ya bánki atóndísí ngáí físi.	The bank manager had me fill out some forms.
Moyángeli ya bánki atóndísélí ngáí físi.	The bank manager filled out some forms for me.
Moyángeli ya bánki apésí ngáí físi mpó nátóndisa.	The bank manager gave me some forms to fill out.
Ífo názwa mbǫ́ngǫ na bánki.	I have to withdraw some money from the bank.
Ífo názwela mwána na ngáí ya mobáli mbwá.	I have to get my son a dog.
Ífo názwela mwána na ngáí ya mwásí nkǫ́ndǫkǫ́.	I have to get my daughter a cat.
Tolobákílóbákí butú mobimba.	We chatted all night.
Totámbólítámbólí butú mobimba.	We walked all night.
Tobę́tíbę́tí makolo butú mobimba.	We walked all night.
Tokatí nzeté ndámbondámbo.	We cut the log up into pieces.
Tokatí nzeté biténibiténi.	We cut the log up into pieces.
Nakanákí nákęnde.	I wish I could go.
Nakanísákí mbúla eékokatana konǫ́kǫ.	I wish it would stop raining.
Nakanákí kosómba mótuka na sánzá elekí.	I wish I could have bought a car last month.
Naákokana kosómba mótuka na sánzá ekoyáa.	I wish I could buy a car next month.
Naákokana násómba mótuka na sánza óyo.	I wish I could buy a car this month.

-yángela	to manage, administrate, arrange
bánki (banque)	bank
físi (fiche)	form, blank
ífo (il faut)	it is necessary to, one has to has to
mbwá, m-	dog
nkó̩ndo̩kó̩, n-	cat

NOTES

20.1 /ífo/ plus Subjuntive

Ífo názwa mbo̩ngo̩ na bánki.

/ífo/, French, il faut', 'it's necessary to', 'one has to', followed a Lingala subjunctive occurs very frequently, as in the sentence above, 'I have to withdraw money from the bank'. /ebo̩ngí/ and /ífo/ may be freely substituted for one another in this type of construction.

20.2 Reduplication for Intensity

Tolobákílóbákí butú míngi.

The base of a stem may be reduplicated or doubled for intensity, e.g., /tolobákílóbákí/ 'we chatted', 'we talked and talked'. In a reduplicated stem, only the tone of the first syllable of the first base is fixed. Other syllables have tones as described in Note 2.2.

20.3 Wishes, Intentions, Plans

Nakanákí náke̩nde̩

Wishes, intentions, and plans are expressed by /-kána/ or

/-kánisa/, e.g., the sentence above translates, 'I have decided to go', 'I wish I could go', 'I intend to go', 'I believe I will go'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Oyébí motu mọkọ́ na Amérique?	Do you know anyone in America?
2. Oyébí Ambassade ya Amérique?	Do you know where the American Embassy is?
3. Áwa Ambassade ya Amérique?	Is this the American Embassy?
4. Áwa esíká ya kobwáka mikandá?	Is this the post office?
5. Azalí esíká ya kobwáka mikandá?	Has he gone to the post office?
6. Azalí kobọ́ngisa bilọ́kọ mpó na mobémbo.	He is packing his things for a trip.
7. Bamosúsu bazalí kobọ́ngisa bilọ́kọ mpó na mobémbo.	The others are packing their bags.
8. Bamosúsu bazalí mpembéni ya mésa.	The others are (sitting) at the table.
9. Mónganga azalí mpembéní ya mésa.	The doctor is (standing) by the table.
10. Mónganga azalí kosálisa motu amízokísákí.	The doctor is taking care of the man who hurt himself.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nasílísí mosálá na ngáí.	I've just finished my work.
2. Nasílí kosála mosálá na ngáí.	I've already finished my work.
3. Nakeí kosála mosálá na ngáí.	I'm (just) leaving for work.
4. Nakeí kosílisa mosálá na ngáí.	I'm getting back to work. I'm going to continue working.
5. Nazalí kosílisa mosálá na ngáí.	I'm about to finish my work.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Naákoleka mpembéní na ndáko.	I'm going by (near) the house.
2.	Naákoleka na katikáti na ndáko.	I'm going through the house.
3.	Naákobima na ndáko.	I'm coming out of the house.
4.	Naákotíka ndáko.	I'm going away from the house.
5.	Naákotíka na ndáko.	I'm leaving it in the house.
6.	Nakeí na ndáko.	I'm entering the house. I'm going home.
7.	Nakeí ó ndáko.	I'm going to(ward) the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Azalí ó esíka ya kobwáka mikandá.	He is at the post office.
2.	Akẹndẹkí ó esíka ya kobwáka mikandá.	He went to the post office.
3.	Akẹndẹkí ó zándo.	He went to the market.
4.	Nazalí kokẹndẹ ó zándo.	I'm on my way to the market.
5.	Nazalí kokẹndẹ ó Amérique.	I'm going to America.
6.	Nakeí na Amérique.	I'm leaving for America.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Babéngáká yé Pólo.	They named him Paul. His name is Paul.
2.	Babéngí yé Pólo.	They called him Paul (by mistake).
3.	Babéngí bilọkọ na Mpútú.	They ordered some things from Europe.

4.	Babéngí ngáí na tẹlẹfọ́n na Mpútú.	They phoned me from Europe.
5.	Atẹlẹ́fọ́nákí ngáí na Mpútú.	He phoned me from Europe.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Tolobákílóbákí mingi.	We chatted a long time.
2.	Batámbólítámbólí mingi.	They walked a very long way.
3.	Batámbólítámbólí mọkọlọ mobimba.	They walked the whole day.
4.	Motu asálákí mọkọlọ mobimba.	The man worked all day.
5.	Motu asálaka mikọlọ nyọ́nsọ.	The man worked every day.
6.	Motu asálaka bifándeli ya mabáyá.	The man makes wooden chairs.
7.	Mwásí amísómbélí bifándeli ya mabáyá.	The woman bought herself some wooden chairs.
8.	Mwásí amísómbélí sapáto ya sika.	The woman bought herself some new shoes.
9.	Apésí bangó sapáto ya sika.	She gave them new shoes.
10.	Apésí bangó matambála ya kala.	She gave them some old head-scarfs.

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Ebọngí nákẹndẹ na aviọ́.	I have to go by plane.
2.	Ífo nákẹndẹ na aviọ́.	I have to go by plane.
3.	Ífo nákẹndẹ kokamata mwásí akoyáa na aviọ́.	I have to go get my wife who'll be arriving by plane.
4.	Ebọngí nákẹndẹ kokamata mwásí akoyáa na aviọ́.	I have to go get my wife who'll be arriving by plane.

5.	Ebǫngí lóbí na ntǫngǫ́ álongwa na mpǫ́ngi na ntángu malámu.	He has to get up early tomorrow morning.
6.	Ífo lóbí na ntǫ́ngǫ́ álongwa na mpǫ́ngi ntángu malámu.	He has to get up early tomorrow morning.
7.	Ífo bátóndisa físi libosó ya kokęndę.	They had to fill out some forms before leaving.
8.	Ebǫngí bátóndisa físi libosó ya kokęndę.	They had to fill out some forms before leaving.
9.	Ebǫngí tóbóngola lęlǫ́ mabelé ó lisálá.	We have to plow the field today.
10.	Ífo tóbóngola lęlǫ́ mabelé ó lisálá.	We have to plow the field today.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1.	Nakanisákí mbúla eékokatana konǫ́kǫ.	I wish it would stop raining.
2.	Nakanisákí nakokákí kosómba mótuka ya sika.	I wish I could buy a new car.
3.	Nakanákí násómba mótuka ya sika.	I wish I could buy a new car.
4.	Nakanákí nákęndę.	I wish I could go.
5.	Nakanákí kosómba mótuka na sánzá elekí.	I wish I could have bought a car last month.
6.	Naákokana kosómba mótuka na sánzá ekoyáa.	I wish I could buy a car next month.
7.	Nakanísí akosómba mótuka na sánzá ekoyáa.	I think he will buy a car next month.

8.	Nakanísí akoyáa na sánzá ekoyáa.	I believe he's coming next month.
9.	Nakanísákí akoyáa na sánzá elekí.	I thought he was coming last month.
10.	Nakanísákí akoyáa ntángu tozaláká na Bóma.	I wish he had come when we lived at Boma.

Unit 21

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ekomeli na ngáí ebúngí. Omọ́ní yangó tẹ? — My pencil is lost. Have you seen it?

-B-

2. Tẹ́, otíyí yangó epáí wápi? — No, where did you put it?

-A-

3. Natíkákí yangó likoló ya mésa, kási sika áwa ezalí tẹ. — I put it on the table, but it isn't there now.

-B-

4. Omọ́ní na nsé ya mésa? Ntángu mosúsú ekwéí na nsé. — Did you look under the table? Maybe it fell off.

-A-

5. Óo, yangó wáná. Elálí na nsé ya mésa kási mpembéní ya ndáko. — Oh, there it is. It's lying under the table next to the wall.

-B-

-gumba	to fold, bend, stoop
-lọkọtọ	to pick up, gahter, collect

6.	Gumbámá na nsé ólọkọtọ yangó. Oókozila nání?	Stoop down and pick it up. Who are you waiting for?
	-A-	
7.	Ekwéí mosíká nákóma tẹ́.	It's fallen way back.
8.	Yáká tópúsa mésa mpembéní.	Come, let's move the table sideways.
	-B-	
	-bénda	to draw/pull/move in/out/up/off/over
9.	Kẹndẹ́ kolọkọtọ nzeté na libándá óbénda ya (y)angó. Nalẹmbí míngi.	Go get a stick outside to rake it out with. I'm very tired.
	-A-	
10.	Sọ́kọ́ nanyákólí ndáko na nzeté, etálí yọ́ ẹ́ẹ.	If I scratch the wall with the stick, it's your responsibility.
	-B-	
	nkóo, nkó, n-	intent, malice, purpose, will
11.	Bóongó óokosála na nkó?	Well, are you going to do it on purpose?
	boye	thus, so
12.	Sọ́kọ́ boye, tíká yangó epọ́lọ wáná.	If that's the case, let it rot there.
	-A-	
13.	Ndéngé nini nátíka?	Why should I get it?

14. Sọ́kí boye, defísá ngáí ekomeli na yọ́ mọ́kọ́, násála misálá na ngáí.	If that's the case, lend me one of your pencils so I can do my homework.

-B-

15. Kamátá!	Take one!

USEFUL PHRASES

Ezalí na efelo.	It's on the wall.
Ezalí pẹnẹpẹnẹ ya efelo.	It's near the wall.
Ezalí katikáti ya efelo.	It's inside the wall.
Akatísí zámba.	He went through the forest.
Atámbólí na zámba.	He took a walk outside. He's gone hunting.
Akeí na zámba.	He went into the interior. He's gone hunting.
Béndá mpéma.	Inhale.
Bimísá mpéma.	Exhale.
Tómbálá rádio ótía mpembéní.	Pick up the radio and put it over there.
Fungólá rádio.	Turn the radio on.
Kangá rádio.	Turn the radio off.
Kangá masíni ya kokaukisa bilambá.	Turn the clothes drier off.
Fungólá masíni ya kokaukisa bilambá.	Turn the clothes drier on.
Pelísá mwínda.	Light the lamp. Turn the light(s) on.

Bomá mwínda.	Extinguish the lamp. Turn the light(s) off.
Tíyá prise ya frigó.	Connect the refrigerator.
Tíyá mó̩to̩ na litúká.	Turn the stove on.
Tíyá prise.	Connect the plug.
Longólá prise.	Disconnect the plug.
Béndá prise.	Disconnect the plug.
Béndá prise ya frigó.	Disconnect the refrigerator.
Bomá litúká.	Turn the stove off.
efelo, bi-	wall
pe̩ne̩pe̩ne̩	near, close, by, against
katikáti	in between, in the middle/center of
zámba	woods, forest, jungle; interior, outside, country
mpéma, m-	breath
-tómbala	to pick up, lift, carry
rádio, radió	radio
-kauka, -kaoka	to be(come) dry
frigó (frigo)	refrigerator
litúká, ma-	three stones used to cook on, cook stove
'prise'	plug (electrical)

21.1 Double Spatial Relationships

Elálí na nsé ya mésa kási mpembéni ya ndáko.

When specifying the location of objects in relation to two other objects, (1) a particle such as /kási/, 'but', or (2) a

pause, /,/, occurs between the two reference locations, or (3) one reference location is in a subordinate clause, e.g., (1) /Elálí na nsé ya mésa kási mpembéní ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (but) next to the wall.', (2) /Elálí na nsé ya mésa, mpembéní ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (,) next to the wall'. or (3) /Bizalákí likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa./, 'They were on the book (which is) on the table.'

21.2 Partitive

mọ́kọ́ na káti na bínú.

míbalé na káti na bangó

/...na káti na/ya.../ is a partitive construction, i.e., it refers to some or part of a group or whole, e.g., /mọ́kọ́ na káti na bínu/, 'one of you', /míbalé na káti na bangó/, 'two of them'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Ekomeli na ngáí ebúngí.	My pencil is lost.
2.	Mwána ya mobáli abúngí.	The boy is lost.
3.	Mwána ya mobáli akwéí. na mbétu.	The boy fell off the bed.
4.	Ekomeli ya mái ya mokandá ekwéí na mbétu.	The pen fell off the bed.
5.	Ekomeli ya mái ya mokandá ekwéí na nsé ya mésa.	The pen fell under the table.
6.	Mokandá ekwéí na nsé ya mésa.	The letter fell under the table.
7.	Mokandá eútí na tatá.	The letter is from my father.
8.	Mbọ́ngọ eútí na tatá.	The money is from my father.
9.	Mbọ́ngọ ekokí tẹ́.	There isn't enough money.
10.	Mái ekokí tẹ́.	There isn't enough water.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Ezalí na nsé ya kíti kási mpembéní ya ndáko.	It's under the chair next to the wall.
2.	Ezalí na nsé kási na káti ya mésa mibalé.	It's on the floor between the two desks.
3.	Bizaláki na nsé kási na káti ya mésa mibalé.	They were on the floor between the two tables.
4.	Bizaláki likoló ya búuku óyo ezaláki likoló ya mésa.	They were on the book on the table.
5.	Natíyákí yangó likoló ya búuku óyo ezaláki likoló ya mésa.	I put them on the book on the table.
6.	Natíyákí yangó na káti ya búuku óyo ezaláki pęnępęnę ya tęlęfǫ́n.	I put them in the book by the telephone.
7.	Nazwákí yangó na káti ya búuku óyo ezaláki pęnępęnę ya tęlęfǫ́n.	I found it in a book by the telephone.
8.	Nazwákí yangó epáí otíkákí.	I found it when you left it.
9.	Ezalí naínu epáí otíkákí.	It's still where you left it.
10.	Ezalí naínu likoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolía.	It's still in the dining room on the table.

Pattern Drill 1

1.	Ekomeli elálí na nsé ya mésa.	The pencil is under the table.
2.	Ekomeli elálí na likoló ya mésa.	The pencil is on the table.
3.	Ekomeli elálí na nsima ya mésa.	The pencil is behind the table.

4.	Ekomeli elálí na libosó ya mésa.	The pencil is in front of the table.
5.	Ekomelí elálí na mpembéní ya mésa.	The pencil is lying near the table.
6.	Ekomelí elálí na nsúka ya mésa.	The pencil is lying at the edge of the table.
7.	Ekomeli elálí pẹnẹpẹnẹ na mésa.	The pencil is lying (right) by the table.
8.	Ekomélí elálí mosíká na mésa.	The pencil is a long way from the table.
9.	Ekomélí elálélí mésa.	The pencil is leaning against the table.
10.	Ekomelí ezalí na káti ya mésa.	The pencil is in the table.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Balọkọ́tí nzeté na libándá mpó na kobénda ekomeli.	They picked up a stick outside to rake the pencil out with.
2.	Kamátá nzeté na libándá mpó na kobénda ekomeli.	Get a stick outside to rake the pencil out with.
3.	Kamátá ekomeli na ngáí mọ́kọ́ ósála na yangó.	Take one of my pencils to do your work with. (Take pencil of me one, you work with it.)
4.	Zwá ekomeli na ngáí mọ́kọ́ ósála na yangó.	Take one of my pencils to do your homework with.
5.	Zwá óyo nalobí na yó.	Take what I told you.
6.	Bósála óyo nalobí na binú.	Do what I told you.
7.	Bósála mosálá na binú libosó molílí ékwéya.	Do the work before night falls.

8.	Ebọngí mọ́kọ́ na káti na binú ásílisa mosálá libosó molílí ékwéya.	One of you has to finish the work before night falls.
9.	Ebọngí mọ́kọ́ na káti na binú ásílisa mosála libosó mói ébima.	One of you has to finish the job before the sun rises.
10.	Ífo míbalé na káti na bangó básílisa mosálá libosó mói ébima.	Two of them have to finish the job before the sun comes up.

Pattern Drill 2

1.	Yáká kosálisa ngáí nálongola mésa.	Come help me move the table out.
2.	Yáká ósálisa ngáí nálongola mésa.	Come help me move the table out.
3.	Yáká kobéndisa ngáí sandúku.	Come help me move the trunk.
4.	Yáká óbéndisa ngáí sandúku.	Come help me move the trunk.
5.	Yáká kofwándisa ngáí.	Come over for a chat. Come over and keep me company.
6.	Yáká ófwándisa ngáí.	Come over for a chat. Come over and keep me company.
7.	Yáká kogúmbisa ngáí bilambá ya mbétu.	Come help me fold the sheets.
8.	Yáká ógúmbisa ngáí bilambá ya mbétu.	Come help me fold the sheets.
9.	Yáká tógúmba bilambá ya mbétu.	Come, let's fold the sheets.
10.	Yáká tóbénda sandúku.	Come, let's move the trunk.

Pattern Drill 3

1.	Ezalí likoló ya mésa, pẹnẹpẹnẹ ya tási.	It's on the table next to the cup.
2.	Ezalí likoló ya mésa, kási pẹnẹpẹnẹ ya tási.	It's on the table next to the cup.
3.	Ezalí na mabelé, pẹnẹpẹnẹ ya mọnọkọ ya ndáko.	It's on the floor by the door.
4.	Ezalí na mabelé, kási pẹnẹpẹnẹ ya mọnọkọ ya ndáko.	It's on the floor by the door.
5.	Ezalí likoló ya mésa, na káti ya búuku míbalé.	It's on the table between the books.
6.	Ezalí likoló ya mésa, kási na káti ya búuku míbalé.	It's on the table between the books.
7.	Ezalí na káti ya linzanza, na nsé ya mbétu.	It's in a box under the bed.
8.	Ezalí na káti ya linzanza, kási na nsé ya mbétu.	It's in a box under the bed.
9.	Ezalí na káti ya sáni, likoló ya lininísa.	It's on a plate in the window.
10.	Ezalí na káti ya sáni, kási likoló ya lininísa.	It's on a plate in the window.

Unit 22

Basic Sentences

	-A-	
1.	Otobísi óyo ezalí kokęndę wápi?	Where is this bus going?
	-B-	
2.	Marénsa. Olingí ókęndę wápi?	To Marensa. Where do you want to go?
	-A-	
3.	Kimwénza. Sǫ́kǫ́ nakamátí yangó nakokóma tę́?	To Kimwenza. If I take it, won't I get there?
	-B-	
4.	Okokóma, kási nǫkí tę́, mpó okokita mbala míngi na nzelá.	You'll get there, but not fast because you'll (have to) change busses several times on the way.
	-A-	
5.	Otobísi mosúsu óyo ekęndękę mbala mǫ́kǫ́ na Kimwénza ezalí?	Is there another bus that goes directly to Kimwenza?
	-B-	
6.	Sǫ́kǫ́ olingí óyo wáná, okozila mwáa ngonga míngi na esíká otę́lęmí.	If you want that one, you'll (have to) wait quite a while where you are standing.
	-A-	
7.	Okanísi ngonga bóni?	How long do you think?

	-B-	
8.	Nayébí tẹ́, mpó otobísi mọ́kọ́ ya Kimwénza elekí mwáa sika óyo.	I don't know because a bus to Kimwenza went by just a moment ago.
	-A-	
9.	Yébísá ngáí naínu, otobísi ezalaka mpé malámu na káti?	Tell me, is the interior of this bus clean?
	-B-	
10.	Ezalí malámu, mabé ndé makẹlẹ́lẹ míngi.	It's clean, only there's lots of noise.
	-A-	
11.	Longwá áwa tíí na Kimwénza baarrets bizalí bóní?	From here to Kimwenza how many stops are there?
	-B-	
	mpámba	free, worthless, only, without reason, vain
12.	Nakanísí míbalé toó mísátu mpámba.	I believe only two or three.
	-A-	
13.	Tálélá ngáí naínu kúná, óyo wáná bús ya Kimwénza?	Look over there, isn't that the bus to Kimwenza?
	-B-	
	makilá	blood; fate, destiny
14.	Ozalí na makilá malámu lẹlọ́, yangó wáná bús ya Kimwénza.	You're in luck today, it's the Kimwenza bus.

USEFUL PHRASES

Epáí wápi bazwáká taksí?	Where is the taxi stand?
Epáí wápi gare ya otobísi ezalí?	Where is the bus station?
Epáí wápi gare ya masíni ezalí?	Where is the train station?
Epáí wápi libándá ya aviọ́ ezalí?	Where is the airport?
Epáí wápi libóngó ya masúwa ezalí?	Where is the ferry crossing? Where is the harbor?
Tíyá kíti ya bibendé na balasáni.	Put the metal chairs on the veranda.
Tíyá kíti ya nkẹ́kẹ́lẹ́ na balasáni.	Put the wicker chairs on the veranda.
Tíyá ekọlọ ya nkẹ́kẹ́lẹ́ na balasáni.	Put the basket on the porch.
Masó akotọ́bọla ndẹ́lẹ lininísa na efelo.	The mason will cut a window in the wall some time in the future.
Masó akotọ́bọla lininísa na efelo mọkọlọ nsima ya lọbí.	The mason will cut a window in the wall the day after tomorrow.
Masó akotọ́bọla lininísa na efelo nsima ya mikọlọ misátu.	The mason will cut a window in the wall three days from now. (See Note 22.2.)
Masó atọ́bọ́lákí lininísa na efelo lóbilóbi elekí.	The mason cut a window in the wall the day before yesterday.
Masó atọ́bọ́lákí lininísa na efelo mikọlọ misátu milekí.	The mason cut a window in the wall three days ago.
Lọkọ́tọ́ matọkọ́.	Pick up the sleeping mats.
Lọkọ́tọ́ nkóni.	Gather some firewood.
Lọkọ́tọ́ biténi ya talatála.	Pick up the pieces of the mirror.

taksí (taxi)	taxicab
gare	station
libóngó, ma-	shore, quay, wharf, dock
balasáni	veranda, porch; hat brim
nkẹ́kẹ́lẹ́, n-	cane, reed, liana, wickerwork
masó (maçon)	mason, bricklayer
-tọ́bọ́lọ	to pierce, puncture; speak ill of someone
ndẹ́lẹ	some time, in the future
litọ́kọ́, ma-	mat, sleeping mat
nkóni, n-	firewood
talatála	mirror, pane of glass, spectacles, lamp, chimney

NOTES

22.1 /longwá áwa tíí na Kimwénza/
Review Notes 8.9 and 9.5

22.2 /nsima ya mìkọlọ misátu/

The meaning of the above phrase is ambiguous. The speaker on whose speech this manual is based uses this phrase only in the sense, 'three days from now', but many persons use this phrase to mean 'two days from now'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Otobísi óyo ekokẹndẹ wápi?	Where is this bus going?
2.	Otobísi óyo ekotẹ́lẹmẹ na Marénsa.	This bus is going to Marensa.
3.	Otobísi óyo ekokóma na Kimwénza.	This bus will take you to Kimwenza.
4.	Nakamátí bús na Kimwénza.	I took the bus to Kimwenza.
5.	Nakamátí bús mbala mọ́kọ́.	I took the bus (only) once.
6.	Okotẹ́lẹmẹ na arrêt mbala mọ́kọ́.	The bus will stop (only) once.

7. Sọ́kọ́ okamátí yangó, okotẹ́lẹmẹ na arrêt.	If you take that one, you'll stop only once (i.e., you get off at the second bus stop.)
8. Sọ́kọ́ okamátí yangó, okokóma nọkí.	If you take this one, you'll get there quickly.
9. Sọ́kọ́ olingí óyo wáná, okokóma nọkí.	If you take that one, you'll get there fast.
10. Sọ́kọ́ olingí óyo wáná, ezalí malámu mabé ndé makẹlẹ́lẹ.	If you take that one, it's O.K. but there's a lot of noise.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Okanísí ngonga bóní?	How long do you think it will be?
2. Okanísí arrêts ya otobísi bizalí bóní?	How many stops do you think the bus makes?
3. Arrêts ya otobísi bizalí bóní na Kimwénza?	How many stops are there on the way to Kimwenza?
4. Okotónga ndáko misátu na Kimwénza.	You are going to build three houses at Kimwenza.
5. Okotónga ndáko misátu sọ́kọ́ osómbí esíká otẹ́lẹ́mí.	If you buy the ground where you are standing, you can build three houses on it.
6. Okomíyíbisa bilọ́kọ sọ́kọ́ osómbí esíká otẹ́lẹ́mí.	If you buy that place, you'll be the cause of your things being stolen yourself. (i.e., knowing the danger of theft there, you would be foolish to make it easy for thieves.)
7. Okomíyíbisa bilọ́kọ sọ́kọ́ akọ́tí na ndáko.	If you go into the house, you'll be responsible for anything that's stolen.

8.	Okolobaloba míngi sǫ́kǫ́ akǫ́tí na ndáko.	If he goes into the house, you'll talk and talk.
9.	Okolobaloba míngi ntángu akokęndę na Amérique.	You'll complain a lot when he goes to America.
10.	Ntángu akokęndę na Amérique nakozala malámu.	If you go to America, I'll be all right.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Motu ya kabínda akátí mwáa eténi ya libáyá.	The carpenter cut a notch in the wood.
2.	Motu ya kabínda alongólí mwáa ndámbo ya libáyá.	The cabinetmaker cut out a notch in the wood.
3.	Motu mǫ́kǫ́ alongólí mwáa ndámbo ya libáyá.	Someone cut out a notch in the wood.
4.	Motu mǫ́kǫ́ afungólákí masíni ya kosukola bilambá.	Someone turned on the washing machine.
5.	Motu mǫ́kǫ́ akangákí masíni ya kosukola bilambá.	Someone turned off the washing machine.
6.	Mobǫngisi akangákí masíni ya kosukola bilambá.	The repairman turned off the washing machine.
7.	Mobǫngisi akatísí lisálá na mbángu.	The repairman crossed the field on the run.
8.	Mbwá ekatísí lisálá na mbángu.	The dog crossed the field in a hurry.
9.	Mbwá elálaka na nsé ya ndáko.	The dog sleeps under the house.
10.	Mbwá elálaka na kátí ya ndáko mibalé.	The dog sleeps between the houses.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Tíyá kíti ya nkẹ́kẹlẹ́ na balasáni.	Put the wicker chairs on the porch.
2.	Tíyá kíti ya mabáyá na kúku.	Put the wooden chairs in the kitchen.
3.	Masó akotọ́bọla ndẹ́le lininísa na kúku.	The mason will cut a window in the kitchen some time later in the future.
4.	Masó akotọ́bọla ndẹ́lẹ lininísa na ndáko ya kolía.	The mason will cut a window in the dining room one of these days.
5.	Tandá matọkọ́ nyọ́nsọ na ndáko ya kolía.	Spread all the mats in the dining room.
6.	Tandá matọkọ́ nyọ́nsọ na mói mpó mákauka.	Spread all the mats in the su sun to dry.
7.	Bói atíkí matọkọ́ nyọ́nsọ na mói mpó mákauka.	The house boy left all the mats in the sun to dry.
8.	Bọ́i atíki mésa ya nkẹ́kẹ́lẹ́ na libándá.	The boy left the wicker table outside.
9.	Náni atíkí mésa ya nkẹ́kẹ́lẹ́ na libándá?	Who left the wicker table outside?
10.	Náni atíkí mésa ya bibendé na libándá?	Who left the metal table outside?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Lẹlọ́ mọkọlọ ya kosukola bilambá.	Today is wash day.
2.	Lẹlọ́ mọkọlọ ya kobọngisa ndáko.	Today is housecleaning day.

3.	Bána ya mosálá babọngísí ndáko.	The domestics straightened up the house.
4.	Bána ya mosálá baákopasola nkóni.	The domestics are splitting firewood.
5.	Andelé aákopasola nkóni.	André splitting firewood.
6.	Andelé azilákí tatá ákẹndẹ mosálá.	André was waiting for the boss to leave for work.
7.	Andelé na Alobé bazilákí tatá ákẹndẹ na mosálá.	André and Albert are waiting for the boss to leave for work.
8.	Andelé na Alobé baákobimisa kíti na mésa na libánda.	André and Albert are bringing the table and chairs outside.
9.	Batóngi ndáko baákobimisa kíti na mésa na libándá.	The masons are bringing the table and chairs outside.
10.	Batóngi ndáko baákoyóka molungé míngi na nzótu.	The masons are too hot.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Mwána óyo azalí na mayẹlẹ mokúsé.	This child is mentally retarded.
2.	Mwána óyo aákokọmbọ talatála na eténi ya elambá.	The child is wiping the mirror with a piece of cloth.
3.	Kulútu na ngáí aákokọmbọ talatála na eténi ya elambá.	My sister is wiping the mirror with a piece of cloth.
4.	Kulútu na ngáí azaláká na mótuka ya mwíndu.	My brother used to have a black automobile.
5.	Mokọmbi balabálá azaláká na mótuka ya mwíndu.	The streetcleaner used to have a black automobile.

6.	Mokọ́mbi balabálá azalí na makilá malámu lẹlọ́.	The road repairman was lucky today.
7.	Léki na yé azalí na makilá malámu lẹlọ́.	Your brother was lucky today.
8.	Léki na yé alongólí bolangíti na bilambá nyọ́nsọ ya mbétu.	Your sister took off the blanket and all the bed clothes.
9.	Nayébí tẹ́ nání alongólí bolangíti na bilambá nyọ́nsọ ya mbétu.	I don't know who took off the blankets and all the bed clothes.
10.	Nayébí tẹ́ epáí ya gare ya masíni ezalí.	I don't know where the train station is.

Unit 23

Basic Sentences

-A-	
1. Bána bakeí wápi?	Where have the children gone?
-B-	
2. Bakeí na etéyolo kosakana na ndembó.	They have gone to school to play soccer.
-A-	
3. Sǫ́kǫ́ toléí mabé? Mpó nazalí kokęndę epáí.	Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it? Because I'm going somewhere.
-B-	
4. Wápi?	Where?
-A-	
Nzámbe	God
Ndáko-Nzámbe	church
-lóngana	to marry, get married (Christian rite)
5. Nalingí nákęndę na Ndáko-Nzámbe kotála bolóngani ya moníngá na ngáí Michel.	I want to go to the church to be present at the marriage of my friend Michel.
-B-	
-bálana	to marry, get married (traditional)
6. Baákobálana lęlǫ́?	Are they getting married today?

-A-	
7. Lẹlọ́ kó! na mpokwá!	Yes indeed, this afternoon.
-B-	
8. Sọ́kí bána bazalákí áwa, ndé tokeí bísu míbalé.	If the children were here, we would go together.
9. Michel bangó na mwásí na yé balíngání míngi mpénza.	Michel and his wife really love each other.
-A-	
10. Ezalí ya sọ́ọlọ́! Bolíngo na bangó eútá bomwána.	That's true. They have loved each other since childhood.
-B-	
11. Nsima ya Ndáko-Nzámbe, bokokẹndẹ kobína wápi?	After (having been at) the church, where are you going to dance?
-A-	
12. Nakanísí na ndáko ya Michel.	I believe at Michel's house.
-B-	
13. Ózóngaka ntángu malámu!	Come home at a reasonable hour.

USEFUL PHRASES

Mamẹ́lọ azalí kosámbela.	The nun is praying.
Mamẹ́lọ azalí kotanga búuku ya bisámbo.	The nun is reading (from) the prayerbook.
Mamẹ́lọ alátí sutáni ya mpẹ́mbẹ́.	The nun is wearing a long white robe.
Mópẹ aákobálisa balóngani.	The priest is marrying the couple.

Pastẹ́lẹ aákobálisa balóngani.	The minister is marrying the couple.
Lopẹ́tẹ́ ya maliási ezalí ya mbọ́ngọ.	The wedding ring is made out of silver.
Lopẹ́tẹ́ ya bolóngani ezalí ya wólo.	The wedding ring is made out of gold.
Zúzi apésí bangó ndíngisa ya koboma libála.	The judge gave them a divorce.
Zúzi apésí bangó nzelá ya koboma libála.	The judge gave them a divorce.
Azalí mokrístu ya mópẹ.	He is Catholic.
Azalí mokrístu ya mísyọ́ni.	He is Protestant.
Azalí mokrístu ya ngẹlẹ́sa.	He belongs to the Salvation Army.
Azalí mopagáno.	He is a pagan.
Nganga nkísi aákobíkisa motu ya maláli.	The medicine man heals people.
Nganga nkísi aákobengana badiábolo.	The medicine man chases away the evil spirits.
Nganga nkísi anọ́kisi mbúla.	The medicine man made it rain.
Tómbólá mosikitẹ́lẹ.	Put up the mosquito netting.
Kángáká mosikitẹ́lẹ.	Always keep the mosquito netting closed.
Nabótámí na Zavié.	I was born in January.
Nabótámí na Fevlié.	I was born in February.
Nabótámí na Málasi.	I was born in March.
Nabótámí na Aprílí.	I was born in April.
Nabótámí na Mái.	I was born in May

Nabótámí na Yúni.	I was born in June.
Nabótámí na Yúli.	I was born in July.
Nabótámí na Áugusti.	I was born in August.
Nabótámí na Setémbe.	I was born in September.
Nabótámí na Okotóbe.	I was born in October.
Nabótámí na Novémbe.	I was born in November.
Nabótámí na Desémbe.	I was born in December.
mamẹ́lo (ma mère)	nun
-sámba	to plead
-sámbela	to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services
esámbo, bi-	prayer
sutáni (soutane)	cloth (clergy); cassock
-bálisa	to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony
pastẹ́lẹ́ (pasteur)	minister, clergyman (Protestant)
maliási (mariage)	marriage
bolóngani, bolongáni, ma-	marriage (Christian rite); married person
wólo	gold
zúzi, zúze (juge)	judge; court, tribunal
libála, ma-	marriage (traditional)
mokrístu, monkrístu, ba-	Christian
misyọ́ni (mission)	missionary, clergyman (Protestant)

ngẹlẹ́sa	Protestant, Salvation Army
mopagáno, ba-	pagan
nganga, ba-	a specialist, master of trade; native doctor; one who conducts religious services
-benga	to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of
diábolo, ba-	devil, evil spirit
mosikitẹ́lẹ, mi- (moustiquaire)	mosquito netting

NOTES

23.1 Suggestive Cohortative

Sọ́kọ́ toléí mabé?

/sọ́kọ́/ and the immediate past mark a suggestive cohortative, which usually translates, 'Suppose...', e.g., /Sọ́kọ́ toléí mabé?'/, 'Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it?'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Mwána akeí wápi?	Where has the child gone?
2. Mwána akeí kotéya na etéyelo.	The boy has gone to teach at the school.
3. Molakisi aákotéya na etéyelo.	The instructor is teaching the school.
4. Molakisi aákolóngana lẹlọ́ na Ndáko-Nzámbe.	The instructor is getting married at the church today.

5.	Banínga baákolóngana lẹlọ́ na Ndáko-Nzámbe.	My friends are getting married at the church today.
6.	Banínga bakozónga na ntángu malámu.	My friends won't get back too late.
7.	Tatá akozónga na ntángu malámu.	My father will get back fairly early.
8.	Tatá akokẹndẹ kobína na ndáko ya Michel.	My father is going to dance at Michel's.
9.	Balóngani bakokẹndẹ kobína na ndáko ya Michel.	The married couple(s) will dance at Michel's house.
10.	Balóngani bazóngí ó mbóka.	The husband and wife went to their village.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Nasómbélí ndáko lifungóla ya sika.	I bought a new key for the house.
2.	Nasómbélí babíni masanga.	I bought the dancers some drinks.
3.	Tozalí kopésa babíni masanga.	We are giving the dancers some drinks.
4.	Tozalí kopésa balóngani bosálisi.	We are giving the couple assistance.
5.	Tozalí kosénga lifúta na basómbi.	We are asking the purchasers for payment.
6.	Toútí kosénga lifúta na basómbi.	We have just asked the purchasers for payment.
7.	Toútí kopésa yé liyébisa.	We have come to give him a notice.

8.	Motóngi ya ndáko azalí kopésa yé liyébisa.	The contractor is going to give him the notice.
9.	Motóngi ya ndáko azalí na ebúteli ya mabáyá.	The builder has a wooden ladder.
10.	Mobomi azaláki na ebúteli ya mabáyá.	The assassin had a wooden ladder.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Akozala kotómbala mosikitẹlẹ likoló libosó ya kolála.	He'll put up the mosquito netting before going to sleep.
2.	Tokangáká mosikitẹlẹ likoló libosó ya kolála.	We closed the mosquito netting before going to bed.
3.	Tokangáká mabọ́kọ ntángu azwáká likámá.	We crossed our arms when he had an accident. (i.e., we did not give him any assistance.)
4.	Bangó míbalé bamípésánáká mabọ́kọ ntángu azwáká likámá.	He aided the person ('they mutually gave hands') who had an accident.
5.	Bangó míbalé bamípésánáká mọnọkọ libosó bákabwáná.	They promised to write to each other after they separated.
6.	Tatá apésáká ngáí mọnọkọ libosó tókabwáná.	My father gave me some advice before we separated.
7.	Tatá apésáká ngáí mwási ya kobála.	My father obtained a wife for me.
8.	Atá ndẹlẹ nakozwa mwási ya mobála.	I will get married sooner or later.
9.	Atá ndẹlẹ nakozwa bokonzi na mbóka na bisú.	Sooner or later I'll have the power in our country.
10.	Ndé yọ mokonzi na mbóka na bisú?	Are you the chief of state of our country?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Nakomí chec.	I wrote a check.
2.	Natóndísí chec.	I filled out a check.
3.	Natíndélí yé chec.	I sent him a check.
4.	Natíndí yé na bánki.	I sent him to the bank.
5.	Natíndí chec na bánki.	I sent the check to the bank.
6.	Nazalí na mbọ́ngọ na bánki.	I have money in the bank.
		I deposited money in the bank.
7.	Nazwí mbọ́ngọ na bánki.	I withdrew money from the bank.
8.	Naséngí mbọ́ngọ na bánki.	I withdrew money from the bank.
9.	Nakeí kozwá mbọ́ngọ na bánki.	I'm going to the bank to get some money.
10.	Nakeí kodéfa mbọ́ngọ na bánki.	I'm going to the bank to borrow some money.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Efelo ya ndáko ebúkání.	The wall of the house collapsed.
2.	Efelo ya ndáko ezalí motánéso.	The wall of the house is yellow.
3.	Elambá na yé ya maliási ezalí motánéso.	Her wedding gown is light yellow.
4.	Elambá na yé ya bolóngani ezalí motánéso.	Her wedding gown is light yellow.
5.	Elambá na yé ya bolóngani eútí na Mpútú.	Her wedding gown came from Europe.

6.	Lopę́tę́ na yé ya bolóngani eútí na Mpútú.	Her wedding ring came from Europe.
7.	Lopętę́ na yé ya bolóngani ezalí ya wólo.	Her wedding ring is gold.
8.	Ntángu na yé ya mabǫ́kǫ ezalí ya wólo.	His wristwatch is gold.
9.	Ntángu na yé ya mabǫ́kǫ ekúfí.	His wristwatch is broken.
10.	Ntángu na yé ya ndáko ekúfí.	His alarm clock is broken.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Mokandá ezalákí likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa.	The letter was on the book on the table.
2.	Natíyí yangó likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa.	I put it on the book on the table.
3.	Natíyí yangó epáí otíkákí.	I put it where you left it.
4.	Nazwákí ekomeli epáí otíkákí.	I found the pen where you left it.
5.	Nazwákí ekomeli likoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolía.	I found the pencil on the table in the dining room.
6.	Tíyélá ngáí mpǫndú na lǫsǫ likoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolía.	Put me some rice with manioc leaves on the table in the dining room.
7.	Tíyélá ngáí mpǫndú na lǫsǫ balámbí na pilipili ná mafúta motáné.	Put me out some rice with manioc leaves cooked with peppers and palm oil.

8.	*Pésá ngáí bilọ́kọ* balámbí na pilipíli ná mafúta motáné.	Give me something cooked with peppers and palm oil.
9.	Pésá ngáí bilọ́kọ *otíkákí lóbí na mpókwa*.	Give me some of the food that you had left yesterday afternoon.
10.	*Lakísá yé ekọ́ti* otíkákí lóbí na mpókwa.	Show her the hat that you left yesterday afternoon.

23.2. Distant Indefinite Future

Atá ndẹ́lẹ nakozwa mwási ya kobála.

/atá ndẹ́lẹ/, 'even sometime', is used to refer to something that is *hoped or wished for* but which is way off in the future if at all, as in the example above, 'I'll get married one of these days.

Unit 24

Basic Sentences

	-A-	
1.	Bozalí na bileko bóní na mbúla mọ́kọ́?	How many seasons do you have per year?
	-B-	
2.	Míbalé, mọ́kọ́ ya mbúla, mosúsu ya elanga.	Two, one rainy and the other dry.
	-A-	
3.	Eleko ya elanga ezalí ntángu níni?	When is the dry season?
	-B-	
4.	Ebandaka na sánzá ya mọ́kọ́ tíí na sánzá ya motóbá.	It lasts from January to June.
	-A-	
5.	Óyo ya mbúla?	And the rainy season?
	-B-	
6.	Elanga ya mbúla ekámátí sánzá ya motóbá, tíí na óyo ya zómi na míbalé.	The rainy season lasts the other six months from June until December.
	-A-	
7.	Lobélá ngáí mwáa makambo elekaka ntángu wáná.	Tell me something about time.

-B-	
8. Ntángu ya mbúla makámá mapusí míngi, mpámba te mbúla ekonǫ́kǫ mingi mpé makási.	During the rainy season there are a lot of natural calamities because it rains a lot and very hard.
-A-	
nkáké, n-	thunder, lightning
9. Bozalí na nkáké tę́ na mbóka na bínú?	Don't you have a lot of thunder?
-B-	
10. Tozalí na nkáké míngi mpé makási lokóla.	We have a lot of thunder, and it's quite loud.
-A-	
11. Ntángu ya mbúla batu basálaka toó babimaka libándá tę́?	During the rain people don't work or go outside?
-B-	
-zinda	to sink, drown, flood
12. Mpó na níni tę́, batu babimaka lokóla ntángu nyǫ́nsǫ́, káka ndé bandáko mosúsu ya kalakala na banzelá mosúsu ya mikę́mikę́ bibúkanaka toó bizindaka.	Why not? People usually go out, only there are some old houses and small roads that are cut off or submurged under water.
-A-	
13. Ndénge níni okokí koyéba sǫ́kǫ́ mbúla elíngí konǫ́ka?	How can you know if it's going to rain?

-B-

14. Ezalí mpási té̩, okomó̩na likoló ekómí moíndu, mpé mbóka molíli, na ntángu wáná, batu ná nyama bakómí kolúka ndáko na bangó.	It's not difficult. You will see the sky become black and the village gets dark, men and animals start looking for shelter.

USEFUL PHRASES

Eleko ya mpela ezalí malámu na koló̩bo̩.	The rainy season is good for fishing.
Eleko ya mpela ekokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu.	The rainy season makes plants grow very fast.
Eleko ya mpela ekoúmelaka sánzá mínei toó mitánu.	The rainy season lasts four or five months.
Mabelé ya zélo ebo̩ngí na mbuma té̩.	Sandy soil isn't suitable for fruits.
Mabelé ya zélo ebo̩ngí na ndúnda té̩.	Sandy soil isn't suitable for vegetables.
Mabelé ya zélo ebo̩ngí na bilóna té̩.	Sandy soil isn't suitable for plants.
Mpáu, mpó na kobóngola mabelé.	A spade is for turning over earth.
Líkwangola, mpó na kikáta nzeté ya miké̩.	A machete is for cutting small trees.
Nkóngo, mpó na kokata matíti mpé kotímola mabúlú.	A hoe is for cutting weeds and digging wells.
Akónaka masángú.	He raises corn.
Akónaka ko̩ko̩tí.	He raises coconuts.

Akónaka mángolo.	He raises mangoes.
Atímólí tomáto.	He hoed the tomatoes.
Atímólí ngúba.	He hoed the peanuts.
Atímólí libélá na nkóngo.	He dug a trench with a hoe.
Akę́ngęlaka bibwę́lę́.	He raises animals.
Abǫkǫlaka nyama.	He raises animals.
Abǫkǫlaka ngǫ́mbę́.	He keeps cows.
Abǫkǫlaka ntaba.	He keeps goats.
Abǫkǫlaka męmę.	He keeps sheep.
Abǫkǫlaka mpatá.	He keeps sheep.
Mbóka ezindí na mái.	The village is flooded.
Mwána azindí na mái.	The child drowned.
Masúwa mazindí na mái.	The boat sank.
lisángú, lisángo, ma-	a grain of corn
kǫkǫtí	coconut, coconut palm
língolo, ma-	mango, mango tree
ngúba, n-	peanuts
libélá, ma-	pit, hole, trench, well, valley
ewę́lę́, bi-	small domestic animal, sheep, goat
ngǫ́mbę́, n-	cow, bull
ntaba, n-	goat
mpatá, m-	sheep
mpela, m-	rain, rainy season, flood
-lǫ́bǫ	to fish
-lóna	to plant, sow

bilóna	plant, planting
zẹ́lọ	sand
ndúnda, n-	vegetables
líkwangola, ma-	machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
nkóngo, n-	hoe, pick-ox
-kóna	to plant, sow

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1.	Bozalí na bileko bóní na mbúla mọ́kọ́?	How many seasons do you have in a year?
2.	Tozalí na bileko míbalé na mbúla mọ́kọ́.	We have two seasons in year.
3.	Tozalí na basángá zómi na míbalé na mbúla mọ́kọ́.	We have twelve months in a year.
4.	Tozalí na basánzá zómi na míbalé mpó na eleko ya mbúla na eleko ya elanga.	We have twelve months during the dry season and wet season.
5.	Lobélá ngáí mwáa makambo mpó na eleko ya mbúla na eleko ya elanga.	Tell me something about the wet and dry seasons.
6.	Lobélá ngáí mwáa makambo elekaka na ntángu wáná.	Tell me something about that time.
7.	Na ntángu wáná makámá mapusí míngi.	During that time, there are a lot of natural calamities.
8.	Makámá mapusí míngi mpámba te mbúla ekonọ́ko míngi mpé makási.	There are a lot of natural calamities because it rains long and hard.

9.	Tozalí na nkáké míngi, mpámba te mbúla ekonǫ́kǫ míngi mpé makási.	We have a lot of thunder and lightning when it rains hard for a long time.
10.	Tozalí na nkáké míngi na mbóka na bísú.	We have a lot of thunder and lightning in our country.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1.	Ntángu ya mbúla batu basalaka toó babimaka libándá tę́?	During the rain, people don't work or go outside?
2.	Mpó na níni tę́, batu basalaka mpé babimaka libándá?	Why don't people work or go outside?
3.	Mpó na níni tę́, tozalí na nkáké míngi mpé makási.	Why not, we have a lot of very loud thunder.
4.	Tozalí na nkáké míngi mpé makasí, kási ntángu ya elanga tę́.	We have a lot of very loud thunder, but not in the dry season.
5.	Bilǫ́kǫ ya kolía bizalí míngi ntángu ya mbúla, kási ntángu ya elanga tę́.	There are lots of things to eat in the rainy season, but not in the dry season.
6.	Bilǫ́kǫ ya kolía bizalí míngi ntángu ya mbúla, mpó mái ezalí míngi na mabelé.	There are many things to eat in the rainy season because there is a lot of water in the ground.
7.	Mpó mái ezalí míngi na mabelé bambuma bikokóla malámu.	Because there is lots of water in the ground, fruits grow very well.

8.	Bambuma bikokóla malámu sọ́kọ mabelé ezalí malámu.	Fruits grow well if the soil is good.
9.	Sọ́kọ mabelé ezalí malámu bilóna bikokóla mbángu.	If the soil is good, plants grow rapidly.
10.	Bilóna bikokóla mbángu na ntángu ya mbúla.	Plants grow rapidly in the rainy season.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1.	Lóbí mọkọlọ níni?	What day is tomorrow?
2.	Lóbí mọkọlọ ya mosálá mítánu.	Tomorrow is Friday.
3.	Nakosála tẹ́ mọkọlọ ya mosálá mítánu.	I won't work Friday.
4.	Nakosála tẹ́ na ntóngó mpé na mpókwa.	I won't work either the morning or the afternoon.
5.	Akẹndẹ́kí na Stade Baudouin tẹ́ na ntọ́ngọ́ mpé na mpókwa.	He didn't go to the Stade Baudoin either in the morning or in the afternoon.
6.	Akẹndẹ́kí na Stade Baudoin tẹ́ lóbí na ntọ́ngọ́.	He didn't go to the Stade Baudoin yesterday morning.
7.	Okoyáa lóbí na ntọ́ngọ́.	You will come tomorrow morning.
8.	Okoyáa lóbí na masanga.	You will come tomorrow with the drinks.
9.	Lobélá yé áyáa na masanga lóbí.	Tell him to bring some drinks tomorrow.
10.	Lobélá yé áyáa na bána lẹlọ́.	Tell him to bring the children today.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1.	Nakeí kosála na Kinsásá.	I'm about to go to work in Leopoldville.
2.	Nakeí kotánga búuku na ndáko.	I'm about ready to read a book at home.
3.	Nakosála bilanga na nsima na ndáko.	I'll cultivate the fields be behind the house.
4.	Nakosála bilanga na nsima ya elanga.	I'll work the fields after the dry season.
5.	Balóni bakokéba na ntángu ya elanga.	The cultivators are attentive during the dry season.
6.	Balóni bakokéba na ntángu bakotímola mabelé.	The cultivators pay attention when they are spading up the ground.
7.	Bakotímola mabelé na nkóngo ná mpáu.	They turn up the earth with hoes and spades.
8.	Áákobóngola mabelé na nkóngo ná mpáu.	They are turning over the ground with hoes and shovels.
9.	Aákobóngola mabelé na ya nsúka ya elanga.	They dig up the ground in the last month of the dry season.
10.	Ebóngí malámu ólóna na sánzá ya nsúka ya elanga.	It's best to cultivate in the last month of the dry season.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1.	Mabelé ya mái eékokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu.	Wet earth makes plants grow very fast.
2.	Eleko ya mbúla eékokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu.	The rainy season makes plants grow very fast.

3.	Eleko ya mbúla ekoúmelaka sánzá mínei toó mítánu.	The rainy season lasts four or five months.
4.	Eleko ya mpela ekoúmelaka sánzá mínei toó mítánu.	The rainy season lasts four or five months.
5.	Eleko ya mpela ezalí malámu na kolọ́bọ.	The rainy season is good for fishing.
6.	Bwátu ezalí malámu na kolọ́bọ.	A dugout canoe is good for fishing.
7.	Bwátu esálamaka na mabáyá makási.	A dugout is (always) made of durable wood.
8.	Ndáko ya bísú esálamaka na mabáyá makási.	Our house is built with strong timbers.
9.	Ndáko na bísú ekabwání na biténi mínei.	Our house consists of four rooms.
10.	Ndáko na bísú etóngámáká libosó ya etumba.	Our house was built before the war.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1.	Bána batíkí maloba na ngáí makeí mpámba.	The children pay no attention to my words.
2.	Bána batíkí ndembó na libándá ya kosana.	The children left the ball on the playground.
3.	Na mpókwa bakobẹ́tẹ ndembó na libándá ya kosana.	This afternoon there will be a soccer game at the field.
4.	Na mpókwa tokokẹndẹ epáí.	This afternoon we will go somewhere.
5.	Balóngani bakokẹndẹ epáí.	The couple will go somewhere.
6.	Balóngani balátákí bilambá ya sika.	The couple were new clothes.

7.	Lóbí bamǫnákí bangó balátákí bilambá ya sika.	Yesterday they appeared wearing new clothes.
8.	Lóbí bamǫnákí bangó ntángu baútákí na Ndáko-Nzámbe.	Yesterday they were seen leaving the church.
9.	Totíndélákí mwásí na mobáli mbǫ́tę́ ntángu baútákí na Ndáko-Nzámbe.	We said hello to the woman and man as they were leaving the church.
10.	Totíndélákí mwásí na mobáli mbǫ́tę́ nsima ya bolóngani na bangó.	We said hello to the woman and man after their marriage.

GLOSSARY

This vocabulary is alphabetized according to the stem consonant and not according to the prefixes, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', is alphabetized under 'a'.

a

mwáa	small, little, few
ái	oh, hey
aló (allô)	hello
'ambassade'	embassy
mwambe, mwambi	eight
mwána, ⊙bána	child
bomwána, (ma-)	childhood
'Anglais'	English
Angelé (anglais)	English
aré (arrêt)	stop
aré ya otobísi	bus stop
mwású, ⊙básí	woman, female, left (opp. right)
atá, atáa	even, even if, although
atá ndę̂lę	much later
bwátu, ⊙mátu	dugout canoe, native boat
avási (avance)	advance, part payment, deposit
avió (avion)	airplane, airmail

b

-bakisa	to add
-bála	to marry (traditional marriage)

libála, ma-	marriage (traditional native)
mbala, m-	time, times, often mostly
mbálá, m-	potato
balabálá, ⊙balabálá	street, (broad) road
-bálana	to marry, get married, marry each other (traditional marriage)
balasáni, ⊙balasáni	veranda, porch; hat brim
ebale, bi-	stream, river
míbalé	two
mobáli, mi-	man, male; right (opp. left)
-balisa	to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony
-banda	to start, commence
bandá	from, since, beginning, starting, continuing/starting from
-bandaka	to begin regularly, to last, continue
libándá	outside; yard, field
mbanda, ba-	co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister; sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ebandeli, bi-	beginning
bobandi, (ma-)	beginning, start
libángá, ma-	rock, stone
mobangé, mi-	elder, old man/woman, age

mbángu, mbángo, m-	speed, swiftness
bánki (banque)	bank
libáyá, ma-	wood, board, bench, seat; aim, target; blouse
mabé	bad, wicked, ugly
mbẹ	then, otherwise, else; perhaps; introduces main clause of conditional sentence
-beka	to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-bekisa	to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
mobéko, mi-	law, regulation, obligation, duty
libélá, ma-	pit, hole, trench; well; valley
-bẹ́lẹ́	to hurt, suffer, be sick
mabelé	ground, earth, floor
mbẹlẹ	then; perhaps; else, otherwise introducing main clause of hypothetical supposition
mbẹlí, m-	knife
-bémba	to travel
mobémbo, mi-	trip, journey
-bénda	to draw/pull/move in, out, up, off, over
ebendé, bi-	piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
libendé, ma-	rod, post, pole; tamper, tamping stick

-béndisa	to help pull/move
-benga	to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of
-bénga	to call, summon; call, name, order (merchandise)
-bengana	to drive away, pursue
'besoin'	need
-bę́tę, -bę́ta	to hit, strike, knock, beat
ebę́tęli, bi-	hammer, tool for hitting
mbétu, mbéto, m-	bed, pallet
-bíka	to recover, lived, be rescued
mbíla, m-	palm nut, palm tree
-bima	to go out, come out, go for a walk, emerge
-bimaka	to go/come out regularly
mobimba, (mi-)	entire, whole
-bimisa	to have (something) come/go out
-bimisela	to have (something come/go out for someone)
-bína	to dance
bobína, ma-	a dance
mobíni, mi-	dancer
mbísi, m-	fish
bǫ́i, (ba-)	houseboy, servant

mbóka, m-	village, region, district; tribe, race; residence, address
libóké, ma-	bunch, group, crowd; pack, package; swarm
lobọ́kọ, ma-	arm, sleve, side, hand
mọbọ́kọli, ba-	raiser, one who cares for/raises children/animals
-bọ́kọlọlọ	to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animals)
bolangíti, bolangísi	blanket
-bolosé (brosser)	to brush
bolósi (brosse)	brush
-boma	to kill, murder, slaughter; hunt catch; damage badly, destroy, extinguish, efface, erase, wipe (off); abolish, eliminate, do away with
-bomba	to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
ebómbeli, bi-	place/rack/cabinet for storage; dresser, bookcase, china-cabinet
mobomi, mi-	killer, murderer, assassin, butcher
-bọngisa	to put in order, prepare, repair, arrange, dress up
-bọngisama	to be repaired (by someone)
-bọngisela	to repair or prepare for someone

mobọngisi, ba-	repairer
mobọngisi ya mótuka	mechanic
-bọngọ, -bọnga	to be suitable, be in order, fit, be fitting
libóngó, ma-	shore, quay, wharf, dock
mbọ́ngọ, m-	money; silver
-bóngola	to change, turn around; stir; interpret, translate; displace, remove, shift
-bósana	to forget, be mistaken, make a mistake
libosó, ma-	front; before, in front of; first, last, fartherest
-bóta	to give birth to, bear, produce
libóta, libótá, ma-	family, household, descent
mbótama, m-	birth
mbọ́tẹ́	greetings, good morning/afternoon/evening
mobóti, ba-	parent
bobótisi, (ma-)	obstetrics, midwifery
mobótisi, ba-	midwife
-bọtọlọ	to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound; pillage
'bourgmestre'	mayor
'bourse d'études'	scholarship
-bóya	to refuse, reject, not want, despise; abandon, leave for good

-búka	to break, demolish, pick, gather; conquer; change direction
-búkana	to be broken; gather, assemble, be equally strong
mbúla, m-	rain, rainy season; year
bulé (bleu)	blue
libúlú, ma-	well, pit, toilet
mbuma, m-	fruit; sore, boil; grain, seed; change, coins
libumu, ma-	stomach, belly, womb
-buna, -bunda	to fight, wage war; wrestle, struggle
-búnga	to forget, make a mistake, be wrong; lose; get lost; lose one's way; die
-búngisela	to lose
'bureau'	office
bús	bus (see otobísi)
-buta	to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase
ebúteli, bi-	ladder, stairs; top, summit
-bútisela	to send something (back) to someone
butó (bouton)	button
butú, ⊙mutú	night
búuku, (ba-)	book
mbwá, m-	dog

-bwáka	to throw, reject, renounce; throw out, disown
ebwę́lę́, bi-	small domestic animal, sheep, goat

c

'chec'	check
'chutes'	rapids
'cravate'	necktie

d

ndáko, n-	house, building, room, shed, wall
Ndáko-Nzámbe	church
ndámbo, n-	part, piece, share, half
nde	then, introduces main clauses in conditional sentence
ndé	only, however, although, inspite of the fact that; a future marker in literary Lingala (Do not use as a future marker)
-défa	to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-défisa	to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
ndę́lę, n-	sometime, in the future
atá ndęle	much later
mondę́lę́, mi-	white man, European
ndembó, n-	rubber; ball

ndéngé, n-	sort, kind, manner, way, quality
ndéngé na ndéngé	all kinds of
ndéngé níni	how
madẹ́su	beans
díi	comrade, friend
midí	noon (11-1)
diábolo, ba-	devil, evil spirit
ndínga, n-	language
ndingisa, n-, (See--lingisa)	consent, permission, authority, authorization
ndọ́bọ, n-	fishing, fish hook
bondóki, ma-	gun, rifle
ndúnda, n	vegetables
dzeké	steamshovel; front-end loader; earth mover; dump truck

e

ẹ́ẹ (sometimes ingressive)	yes; oh
'election'	election
essénce	gasoline

f

falánga, falánka (franc)	franc
-fánda, -fwánda	to sit, be seated, live, reside
efándeli, bi-	seat, chair
-fándisa	to cause to sit, have sit

efelo, bi-	wall
fiẹ́fẹ́lẹ́, fẹ́vẹ́lẹ́ (fièvre)	fever
físi (fiche)	form, blank
fotó (photo)	photograph, picture
Français (also Falansé)	French
frigó (frigo)	refrigerator, cold storage room
-fúnga	to shut, close; take grasp; button
-fúngola	to open, release, unlock, unbutton
lifungóla, ma-	key
lifúngú, ma-	button
-fungwamaka	to be opened
-fúta	to pay; a tone, make up for
lifúta, ma-	pay, payment, salary
mafúta	oil, fat, grease
mofúteli, ba-	payer, tenant, renter
-fwánda	(See -fánda)
-fwándisa	(See -fándisa)

g

ngai	sour(ness)
ngáí	I, me, my, mine
ngaí (emphatic subject)	
Lingála	the Lingala language
mónganga, mí-	physician, European doctor
'gare'	station

'gaz'	gas
magazíni (magasin)	store, shop; depot, storage place
gbagbà, ᵉgbagba	bridge
'gendarme'	policeman
-ngęngę	to shine, blaze, gleam
-ngęnisa	to cause to shine, blaze, gleam
míngi	much, many
bangó	they, them
bóongó	thus, so
yangó	they (impersonal)
ngóla, n-	ngola tree; reddish powder make from its bark; red, purple, violet
língolo, ma-	mango
ngómbá, n-	mountain, hill
ngǫ́mbę́, n-	cow, bull
-ngomela	to iron for someone
-ngomelisela	to have something ironed for someone
ngonga, n-	time, hour, bell, gong; clock
'goudron'	tar
'gouvernement'	government
ngúba, n-	peanut(s)
-gumba	to fold, bend; stoop
-gumbama	to be bent/folded/stooped
mongungi, monkungi, n-	mosquito

ngúyá	strength, power; ability, quality
móngwa, mi-	salt

l

mái	water: sap, juice
mái-mái	liquid
mói	sun, sunlight, daylight, day, the heat of the sun
ífo (il faut)	it is necessary, to have to
naínu	still, yet

k

kaba	to give, state; divide, share; betray
kabínda, ba-	carpenter, cabinetmaker
kabiné (cabinet)	toilet; excrement
-kabola	to hand out, distribute divide up, separate
-kalwana	to be separated/divided/distributed
nkáí, n-	paddle, oar
káka	only
nkáké, n-	thunder, lightning
kala	formerly, earlier, old
kalesó (caleçon)	shorts, underwear
-kálinga, -kálanga	to roast, bake, fry

likámá, ma-	danger, accident, natural calamity; punishment, retribution
nkámá, monkámá	hundred
-kamata	to take, receive, accept
likambo, ma-	difference, matter, case, dispute, affair
kamió (camion)	truck
kana	then, otherwise
-kána	to resolve, intend, threaten, promise
mokandá, mi-	letter, paper, document
-kanga	to wrap up, package; stop, cease, close, shut; take, grasp
-kangama	to be stopped, tied, captured, congealed
ekangeli, bi-	handle; band; devide for turning
-kangema	to be closed
bokangi, (ma-)	a stop, stopping
-kangwama	to be opened
-kangisa	to stop, cause to stop; join fasten, screw tight; detain
-kangola	to release, let go of, loose, open unroll, unlock, unfasten
-kangolela	to open for someone
-kangwa	to be open, be unlocked
-kanisa	to think, reflect

likanisi, ma-	thought, opinion, intention
kánya, nkánya, (n-)	fork, pitch fork, rake
kási	but, on the contrary
makási	very, much, strong, hard
-káta	to cut, chop
-míkata	to cut oneself
-kátana	to cut each other; get cut; stop
káti	in, inside (of), in the middle of, among; center, middle, inside
katikáti	in between, in the middle/center of
-katisa	cause/have cut; cross; interrupt, change direction, go through bend, curve
-kauka, -kaoka	to be(come) dry
-kaukisa	to dry, cause to dry
káwa	coffee
likáyá, ma-	tobacco, cigarette, cigar
kazáka	coat, jacket, vest
moké, mi-	small, thin; smallness
-kéba	to pay attention, be attentive
likeí, ma-	egg
bokei, (ma-)	departure, starting, separation discrimination, distinction
nkę́kę́lę́, n-	cane, reed, liana, wickerwork

ekeko, bi-	picture, sculpture, statue
kelási	class, classroom, school
lokelé, n-	spoon
makẹlẹ́lẹ	quarrel, argument, sound of voices, noise
-kẹndẹ	to go, go away; die
-kẹ́ngẹ	to take glances at, watch
-kẹ́ngẹlẹ	to watch, guard, keep; raise animals
mokẹ́ngẹli, ba-	guard, keeper, protector, sentinel, overseer, warehouse-keeper
makílá	blood; fate, destiny
bokila, ma-	hunt(ing)
mokili, mi-	mainland, land; interior, inland; world
kiliyó, kilió (crayon)	pencil; legal charges, costs
bokiló, ⓥbakiló	parent-in-law; brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintances
nakínga, n-	bicycle
kiníni (quinine)	quinine
nkísi, n-	medicine, charm
-kita	to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish
kíti	chair

-kitisa	to cause to come down/descend; bring down, put down; take a person somewhere, drop off a person
kitọ́kọ	beauty, beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat
Kitúba, Kutúba	the Kituba language
kó	indeed, certainly; come on
mọ́kọ́	one; certain, some
mokóbo, mi-	color, paint
-koka	to be able, can; be all present; be sufficient, enough
kóko, ba-	grandparent, grandchild
-kóla	to grow (up), increase
lokóla, n-	kind, sort, like, similar, such as
-kólisa	to cause to grow, bring up, raise, rear
ekólo, bi-	tribe (race), people of same place or language
nkóo, nkó, n-	intent, malice, purpose, will
kọkọti	coconut, coconut palm
likoló, ma-	sky, heaven; up, top, surface, above, over, on
lokolo, ma-	leg, foot paw; wheel, rim, tire
mọkọlọ, mi-	day
mokóló, ba-	grown person, adult
kọ́lọ́ngọ́nu	health

mọnkọlọ́tọ, mi-	line
-koma	to write, sign, inscribe, enroll
-kóma	to arrive, begin
-komama	to be written
-kọ́mbama	to be swept/cleaned (by someone)
-kọ́mbọ, -kọ́mba	to sweep, clean house; empty; wipe up/off; clean up/off
nkómbó, n-	name; honor, reputation
-komela	write to/for someone
ekomeli, bi-	writing instrument, writing, material, pencil, pen
ekomeli, bi-	pencil, pen, writing material
bokómi, (ma-)	arrival
mokomi, ba-	writer, author, scribe
-kómisa	to start, begin; cause to start/ begin
komisẹ́lẹ (commissaire)	commissioner, policeman
-kóna	to plant, sow
nkọ́ndọkọ́, n-	cat
nkóngo, n-	hoe, pickax
mọkọngọ, mi-	back
-konza	to manage, rule
mokonzi	chief, king, boss, supervisor
kọ́pọ	glass, tumbler, cup
-kọ́ta, kọ́tọ	to enter, go in
ekọti, bi-	hat (man's)

-kọ́tisa	to cause to enter, insert, put in
nkóto	thousand
kovokasió (convocation)	notice, summons, traffic ticket
mokrístu, monkrístu, ba-	Christian
-kúfa	to die; wear out; be broken
kúku	kitchen; cook
-kulútu, ba-	older brother/sister
kúná	over there, yonder
-kunda	to bury; plant
monkungi; mongungi, n-	mosquito
mokúsé, mi-	short, small
-kúta	to meet, find, come upon
-kútana	to meet/find lack other
-kwá, -kwéya	to fall, fall down; take, get, obtain; cost
líkwangola, ma-	machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
-kwéisa	to drop, throw down, cut/pull down, cause to fall, demolish, give judgment againsts in a lawsuit
-kwéya	to fall, be involved in/lose a lawsuit

1

bolaí, (ma-)	length, depth, height
molaí, mi-	long, large, tall, deep, high
-laka	to give advice, set a time, promise; order
-lakisa	to show, display, teach, instruct
molakisi, ba-	teacher
-lála	to sleep, lie down, stay, remain
lilála, ma-	orange
maláli, maládi (maladie)	sickness, illness
-lálisa	to put to bed, put to sleep
-lámba	to cook, prepare food
elambá, bi-	cloth, material, piece of clothing
-lámbela	to cook or prepare food for someone
molámbi, ba-	cook
malámu	good, well, fine
-landa	to follow, pursue; prosecute, sue; look for; woo, court
elanga	field, garde; dry season; year, cultivating season
lángi, n-	color, paint
-láta	to dress, put on clothes
-látisa	to dress, cause to put on clothes
biléi	food(s), meal
boléi, (ma-)	meal

-léisa	to feed, cause/give to eat
-leka	to go by, pass by, surpass, excel
-lekaka	to go/pass by regularly; to happen, continue to happen
léki, ba-	younger brother/sister
-lekisa	to have pass by, pass on; neglect; omit, miss
eleko, bi-	season, time, period
lęlǫ́	today
-lęmbę	to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done; (re)lax(ed), soft, moderate, abate
-lęngęlę	to prepare, get ready
elęngi	pleasing to the senses; good taste/smell, beauty
letá (l'état)	government, state
Kikongo ya Letá	Kituba
-lía	to eat
libwá	nine
míliki	milk
malíli	cold; shade, cool place
molíli	dark, obscure, darkness; ignorance
-límbisa	to forgive, pardon, excuse
bolímbisi, (ma-)	forgiveness, pardon
-linga	to want, like; be almost on the point of; love, be fond of

-lingana	to love/like each other; intertwine
-lingisa	to authorize, grant permission
bolingo, ma-	love, will
lísu, líso, °mísu, °míso	eye (in pl.) with eyes open; with good vision/taste; unafraid
-loba	to speak, tell, say
-lobaloba	to talk a lot, discuss, argue, complain
-lobaloba	to chat, engage in small talk, complain, talk nonsense
-lobela	to speak to
molobeli, ba-	speaker, intercessor, lawyer
molobi, ba-	speaker, lecturer
-lọ́bọ	to fish
elọ́kọ, bi-	thing, object
bolọ́kọ, ma-	jail, prison
-lọkọtọ	to pick up, gather, collect
bololo	bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-lóna	to plant, sow
bilóna	plant, planting, that which has been planted
-lóngana	to marry, get married (Christian rite)
balóngani	married couple(s)
bolóngani, bolongáni, ma-	marriage (Christian rite); married person

-longola, -longwa	to take away, remove, undress; wake up
bolongoli, (ma-)	removal, subtraction
lopitálo, ba-(hôpital)	hospital
lọ́sọ	rice
-luka	to hunt, search
-lúka	to row/paddle a boat
-lukela	to hunt for (something) for someone
molungé, mi-	warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling
lútu	spoon

m

ma	of, belonging to
má	Here! Take it!
maliási (mariage)	marriage
mamá, ba-	mother
lománde (amende)	fine, penalty
-mata	to go up, climb, rise
'mécancien'	mechanic
-meka	to measure, weigh, try (out), test
bomeki, (ma-)	attempt, effort, try
-mẹlẹ	to drink, suck, smoke; take medicine
melesi (merci)	thanks
-mẹlisa	to cause/give to drink

mamẹ́lọ, ba- (ma mère)	nun
-mẹmẹ	to carry, transport
-mẹmẹlẹ	to carry for someone
momẹmi, ba-	porter, carrier, bearer
mésa	table
méyá, loméyá	fifty-centime piece
lomingo	Sunday, week
-mọ́nana	to be seen, appear; see each other; get seen
-mọ́nọ, -mọ́na	to see, feel, observe
'Monsieur'	Mister, Sir, Gentleman
mwínda	light, lamp
mwíndu, moíndu, moíndo, ba-	black, dark; a Negro, an African

n

na	in, of, by, with; and
ná	and, also, even, besides; in addition
mínei	four
monẹ́nẹ, mi-	big, thick, wide; fat, tall
bóní	how much, how, many
náni, ba-	who, which
níni, ba-	what, which
moníngá, mi-	friend, companion, colleague, peer
-nọ́, -nọ́kọ	to rain
nọkí	fast, quick, prompt, early

-nọ́kisa	to make/cause to rain
-nọ́kọ	(See -nọ)
nọ́kọ́, ba-	uncle, mother's brother
mọnọkọ, mi-	mouth, opening; word, message
bínú	you (pl.)
línu, líno, ma-	tooth
numeró (numéro)	number

o

ó	to, toward, at, in, on, by
óo	oh!
otobísi (autobus)	bus

p

límpa, ma-	bread, piece of bread
mopagáno, ba-	pagan
epáí, bi-	side, part, direction
mpáku, mpáko, ni-	tax; corvee labor
paláki (plaque)	plate, plaque; auto licence plate
palató, ba-	errand boy, messenger postman
-palola	to skin, peel, scrape (off), scour (off)
mpámba, m-	free, worthless, only, vain, without reason; nothing
lopángo, m-	enclosure, fence; plot of land; place of residence

-papola	to make thinner, shave off, remove an excess
'Parlementaire', ba-	member of Parliament
mpási, m-	pain, suffering illness
-pasola	to tear (off), cleave, split (off), saw, clear (away)
pastę́lę (pasteur)	minister, clergyman (Protestant)
-pasuka	to be worn out
-paswa	to be split, torn; explode, split suddenly
mpatá, m-	sheep
mpáta, m-	five-franc piece
pataló (pantalon)	trousers, pants
mpáu, mpáo, m-	shovel, spade
mopaya, ba-	stranger; guest, visitor; host
mpé	and, also, even
mópe, mómpe, ba- (mon père)	priest (Catholic)
-pela	to be on fire, burn, be hit
mpela, m-	rain; rainy season; flood
-pelisa	to kindle, light; sharpen
mpéma, m-	breath
mpę́mbę́	chalk, white; ivory
mpembéní, m-	side, edge; around, near, beside, along, next to
pęnępęnę	near, close, by against
mpenzá, m-	only, alone, really, truly, completely

mopępę, mi-	wind, air
-pésa	to give, provide with
-pésana	to give to each other
lopę́tę́, m-	ring; stripe, braid
mompíla, mi-	undershirt, tee shirt, vest, sweater
pilipíli	red pepper, pimento
mpió, m-	cold
piósi (pioche)	pick, pickofe
pitǫlǫ́ (petrole)	kerosene
mpó	thing, matter, affair; because, on account of
mpó na níni	why
mpókwa, m-	afternoon, (until 6 p.m.)
polísi (police)	policeman, police
-pǫlǫ	to be(come) wet/soggy/rotten; be beaten, defeated
pómpi	pump, spray; filling station
mpǫndú	manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)
mpǫngí, m-	sleep
-pǫnǫ, pǫna	to choose, select, elect, prefer
mpósá, m-	urge, desire
pósi (poche)	pocket, pouch, sack
pǫ́sita (poste)	post office, post service, mail box

mpọ́sọ, m-	week; ration; Saturday; weekend, salary, pay
'président'	president
'prise'	plug (electrical)
'pull-over'	sweater
-pupa	to blow, fan, window; shake; clean by blowing/shaking
-púpola, pupola	to blow/shake/clean off
-pusa	to surpass, exceed, be very, be too much
-púsa	to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)	push cart; baby carriage, stroller
lipúta, ma-	pagne, long wrap-around skirt
putulú	cinders, ashes, dust, powder

r

rádio, radió	radio

s

sabóni (savon)	soap
mosai, monsai, mosapi, mi-, n-	finger, toe
-sakana	to pay, enjoy oneself, have a good time
-sála	to do, work, perform, make, till the ground, farm
lisálá, ma-	field, cultivation; vegetable dish

mosálá, mi-	job, work, trade, occupation
-sálama	to be done/made
-sálamaka	to be done/made habitually
esálali, bi-	tool, instrument
-mísáleli	to make/do for oneself
mosáleli, ba-	servant
esálelo, bi-	workshop, workroom, place to work
mosáli, ba-	worker, employee
-sálisa	to help, take care of; employ, instruct
-sálisana	to help each other
lisálisi, bosálisi, ma-	help, aid, assistance
mosálisi, ba-	assistant, helper
-sámba	to plead
esámba, bi-	prayer
-sámbela	to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services
nsambo	seven
-sana, -sakona	to play, amuse oneself
-sanga	to assemble, meet; mix
sandúku, (ba-)	trunk, box, suitcase, chest
masanga	wine, beer
nsango, n-	news, report
sáni, ba-	dish, bowl, plate, basin
mosani, ba-	player

lisano, lisanu, ma-	game
sánzá	month, moon; salary
sapáto, sapáta	shoe(s)
mosapi, mosai, mi-	finger, toe
mísátu, mísáto	three
'sciences économiques'	economics
se, te	that... (introduces subordinate clause)
nsé, n-	earth, world; bottom; down under, beneath
-seba	to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine
'secrétaire'	secretary
sémba	right, just, honest
-sémba	to extend, be right/upright
-sémbola	to put right, straighten up, make vertical
-sémbwa	to be right, just, sincere; be in an upright position, be straight
-sẹ́nge, -sẹ́nga	to ask for, beg; order (merchandise)
sika, sikáwa	now, just now, recently, immediately
esíká, bi-	place; where; when, while
mosíká, mi-	distance; distant, remote, far off

mosikítẹ́lẹ, mi- (moustiquarie)	mosquito netting
-síla	to finish, be done, finished, already
silási (cirage)	polish, shoe polish
nsima, n-	back, rear, later, afterward
na nsima	then, next
-símba	to hold, seize
siméti (ciment)	cement
simísi (chemise)	shirt
sinemá (cinéma)	movies, cinema
singa	cord, rope, wire, cable; band, belt
masíni (machine)	machine, mechanical instrument; train
nyọ́nsọ, bánsọ	all, every, each
líso, ⊙míso (see lísu)	
sodá, ba- (soldat)	soldier
sọfẹ́lẹ, ba- (chauffeur)	driver, chauffeur
sọ́kọ́, sọ́kí	if, whether, about, perhaps
sokolá (chocolat)	brown, dark red
sokoto	uniform, military jacket/ clothing
-solola	to talk, converse, speak,
sọ́ọlọ́	true, real
mọsọlọ, mi-	money, wealth; dowry
-sómba	to buy, purchase, procure

-sómbama	to be purchased
-sómbela	to sell to someone
-mísómbela	to buy for oneself
mosómbi, ba-	purchaser, buyer
mọsọni, ba-	seamstress, tailor
-sọnọ	to sew, make clothes
-sopa	to pour, spill, overturn, spread; talk nonsense
soséti (chausette)	sock, stocking
nsóso, n-	chicken
bísú	we
lísu, líso, ⊙mísu, ⊙míso	eye; (in pl.) with eyes open, with good vision/taste; unafraid
nsúka, n-	the end
nsúka ya mpọ́sọ	weekend
-súka	to end, finish; separate
sukáli (sucre)	sugar; candy; sweet
mosúki, n-	hair
-sukola	to wash, clean, launder; to speak frankly to someone, tell someone off
-mísukola	to bathe, take a bath
-sukolela	to wash/clean for someone
-sukolelisa	to have something washed/cleaned for someone
-sukwama	to be/have been washed, mopped

sumé (essuie-main)	towel, wash cloth
lisúsu	again, besides, else, moreover, yet
lisúsu tę́	no more, no longer
mosúsu, mi-	other, others, else
na ntángu mosúsu	occassionally, sometimes
sutáni (soutane)	cloth (clergy), cassock
masúwa, maswá	boat, ship
-swáa	to bite, sting
mísyǫ́ni (mission)	mission; missionary, clergyman (Protestant)

t

ntaba, n-	goat
etabe, bi-	banana
matabísi (matabiche)	matabiche, something extra given as an incentive to buy; tip, gratuity, advantage, profit
taksí (taxi)	taxicab
-tála	to look, look at, visit
talasé (terrasse)	ditch, canal
talatála	mirror, pane of glass; spectacles, lamp chimney
botáli, (ma-)	view; viewing, contemplation
motáli, mi-	spectator, observer
-tálisa	to demonstrate, show
litálisi, ma-	show, demonstration, display

taliyé, 'talyé (atelier)	workshop, shop, workroom
ntálu, ntálo, n-	price, number
litambála, kitambála, ma-	handkerchief, cloth, towel, napkin
-támbola	to take a walk, travel, move, make progress, hurry
-támbolatambola	to walk a lot, a long way; wander
-tambwisa	to put in motion, start, drive (a car)
motámbwisi, ba-	one who sets in motion, one who spreads, steersman
motábwisi ya mótuka	driver, chauffeur
-tanda	to spread, stretch out
motáné	bright red/orange/yellow
motánéso	light yellow/tan/beige
-tánga	to read,count,enumerate,add up
ntángu, ntángo, n-	time, hour; clock; sun
mítáno, mitánu	five
tási (tasse)	cup
sáni ya tási	saucer
tatá, ba-	father
matánga	matánga, mourning, reception held at end of mourning and certain other special occasions
ntángu, ntángo, n-	time, hour; sun; clock
tẹ́ //te//	not, no

te //'te//	that, so that, in order that
téé, tíí	until
motéi, motéyi, mi-	teacher, instructor
-tẹ́ka	to sell; betray; damage another's reputation
motẹ́ki, ba-	seller, trader
motẹ́kinyama, ba-	meatseller, butcher
-tẹ́kisa	to cause to sell; resell at a profit
tẹlẹfọ́n (telephone)	telephone
-tẹ́lẹmẹ	to stop, stand up; insist
ntembe, n-	discussion, argument; doubt, suspicion, hesitation
tẹ́mbẹlẹ (timbre)	postage-stamp
eténi, bi-	piece, part, share, room
-téya	to teach, instruct
litéya, ma-	lesson
etéyelo, bi-	school
motéyi, motéi, mi-	teacher, instructor
'thermomètre'	thermometer
tíi	tea
tíí, téé	until, up to; (for) a long time, without interruption
-tíela, -tíyela, -tíla	to put for, put in for, pour for
-tíka	to leave, abandon, renounce, forsake, abstain from, cease; leave behind; deliver; let, permit

-tíkala	to stay, remain, stay behind
botíki, (ma-)	resignation, abdication
-tíma	to dig, spade
-tímola	to dig up, spade over, turn over the soil
ntína, n-	root; basis, meaning, reason cause, significance, principle; because
ntína na, ntína ya	because of, on account of, therefore
-tínda	to order, command; send
-tíndama	to be sent, shipped
-tíndela	to send someone, order someone
litíti, ma-	blade of grass; hair, sheet of paper; weed, plant
-tíya	to put (in/on), set pour in place, load (up/on)
-tíyana	to put up with each other,
-tíyana ntembe	to discuss
-tíyela, -tíela	to put for, put in for, pour for
tiyó (tuyau)	pipe, tube, hose
moto (See motu)	
motó, mutú, motú, mi-	head; bunch
mọ́tọ	fire, heat
toó	or
motóbá	six
-tọ́bọlọ	to pierce, puncture

-tóka	to draw water; dig out/up
-tọkisa	to boil, be boiling, cause to boil
-tọkọ	to boil, be boiling
tomáto	tomato
-tómbala	to pick up, lift, carry
-tónda	to be(come) full/filled; fill
-tóndisa	to fill
-tọ́ndọ	to wish, hope, thank
-tonga	to bind, tie, join; twist, braid, plait, weave, sew; expand, enlarge
-tónga	to build
-tóngama	to be built, be finished
motóngi, ba-	builder, contractor, mason
-tóngisa	to have built, cause to be built
ntọ́ngọ́, n-	morning, afternoon
motu, moto, ba-	person, human, man
mutú (See motú)	
mótuka, mi-	automobile, truck, motor car
litúká, ma-	three stones used to cook on; cook stove
ntúkú, n-	ten
-tumba	to burn, set fire to, fry, roast over/in a fire
etumba, bi-	war, fight, battle, conflict
-tumbama	to be burned, fired

-túna	to ask, question
-mítúna	to wonder, ask oneself
motúna, mi-	a question
-túnama	to be questioned, interrogated
kitúnga, litúnga, ma-	basket with a lid
litungúlu, ma-	onion, leek
-túta	to strike, beat, mash, crush, bump (against)
motúya, mi-	value, price; number, arithmetic

u

-úmela	to remain, stay on, stay away
-umelaka	to last, continue to last
'université'	university
-úta	to come from
útá	from, since

v

'ville'	city, town; downtown; Kalina, the business and European section of Leopoldville
vínu	wine
víza (visa)	visa
'voiture'	automobile
-'voter'	to vote

w

wa	of, at
áwa	here; since, as, while

mwa	of, belonging
wáná, wáaná	there, that, by/near you
wápi	where; (emphatic negative) not at all, nothing at all, not whether
wólo	gold

Y

ya	of, belonging to
-yáa	to come, come to be, become
-nyákola	to scratch, mark
nyama, n-	animal, meat
monyámá, mi-	net
-yangela	to manage, administrate, arrange
moyángeli, ba-	manager, director, administrator
yé, yeé	he, she, him, her, his, hers
boye	so, thus
-yéba	to know, know how to, be acquainted with; may, be allowed to
-yébana	to become known
-yébisa	to advise, inform, make known
liyébisa, ma-	notice, indication
-yékola	to study, learn
moyékoli, ba-	student
-yékwisa	to teach, instruct
moyékwisi, ba-	teacher, instructor

mayẹ́lẹ	intelligence, understanding, intellect, mind; shyness, craftiness, manner, means
-yémba	to sing
loyémbo, n-	song, singing
moyémbi, ba-	singer
eyenga, bi-	festival, feast day; Sunday, week
-yíba	to steal, take away
moyíbi, ba-	theif
-yibisa	to cause to steal, cause to be stolen
-yínda	to become dark/black/dirty
-míyíbisa	to cause to be one's possession, to be stolen
yó, yoó	you (sg.), your, yours
óyo	this, these, the
-yóka	to hear, listen; feel; understand
-yókama	to be heard (by someone)
-yókana	to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree, live on good terms with
-nyọ́kọlọ	to mistreat, torture, annoy, oppress
monyọ́kọli, ba-	torturer, tyrant, slavedriver; weariness, bother, trouble
nyongo, n-	debt

z

-zala	to be, exist, sit, live
-zala na	to have
-zala ya	to be made of, consist of
nzala, n-	hunger; famine
ezalali, bi-	seat, chair, bench
bozali, (ma-)	being, nature
ndéngé ya bozali	character, personality
zámba, ⊙mámba	woods, forest, jungle, interior, outside, country
Nzámbe	God
zándu, zándo	market, open produce market
-zánga	to be lacking, miss, be without, absent
linzanza, ma-	metal box, tin car; sheet of metal
nzelá	See nzilá
zẹ́lọ	sand
nzémbo, n-	song, singing
-zénga	to cut off, chop off
nzeté, n-	tree, stick, piece of wood, handle
nzilá, nzelá, n-	road, way, path, passage; admittance, permission; opening; means
-zila	to wait, wait for
-zinda	to sink; drown, flood, go under water

-zoka	to be injured, be touched
-zokisa	to injure, wound
-mízokisa	to injure/wound oneself
nzoku, n-	elephant
zómi	ten
-zónga	to return, go/come back
-zóngisa	to send/give back; answer
nzótu, nzóto, n-	body
zulunálo (journal)	newspaper, magazine
zúzi, zúze (juge)	judge; court, tribunal
-zwá	to get, receive, find, meet
-zwáma	to be taken, received, found

PROPER NAMES

Alobé (Albert)	Albert
'Américain'	American
'Amérique'	America
Andelé (André)	Andrew
'Antoine'	Antoine
Áugusti (août?)	August
Bínza	Binza, the (former) European section of Leopoldville
Brazzaville	the city of Brazzaville
California	California
CEGÉAC	C.E.G.E.A.C., a new-car dealer th that imports American-made cars

Coq	the city of Coquilhatville
Desémbe (decembre)	December
Fevlié (février)	February
Kimwénza	Kimwenza
Kinsásá	Leopoldville; the original settlement, now only a part of Leopoldville
Kisangani	the city of Stanleyville
Kongó	Congo
Leó	the city of Leopoldville
Mái (mai)	May
Málasi (mars)	March
Marénsa	the city of Marensa
Matádi	the city of Matadi
'Michel'	Michel
Mónika (Monique)	Monique
Stanley	Sir Henry Morton Stanley
Novémbe (novembre)	November
Okotóbe (octobre)	October
'Pierre'	Pierre
Pólo (Paul)	Paul
Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)	Europe
Setémbe, Setémbele (septembre)	September
Yúli (juillet)	July
Yúni (juin)	June
Zavié (janvier)	January
Zóla, Zolá	Zola (proper name)

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1963 O - 702-213(53)